



From the Digital Library Collection ,
Of ,
St. Mary's Hermitage Nr. Canterbury in Kent ,

The Order of the Hermits of Saint Bruno ,

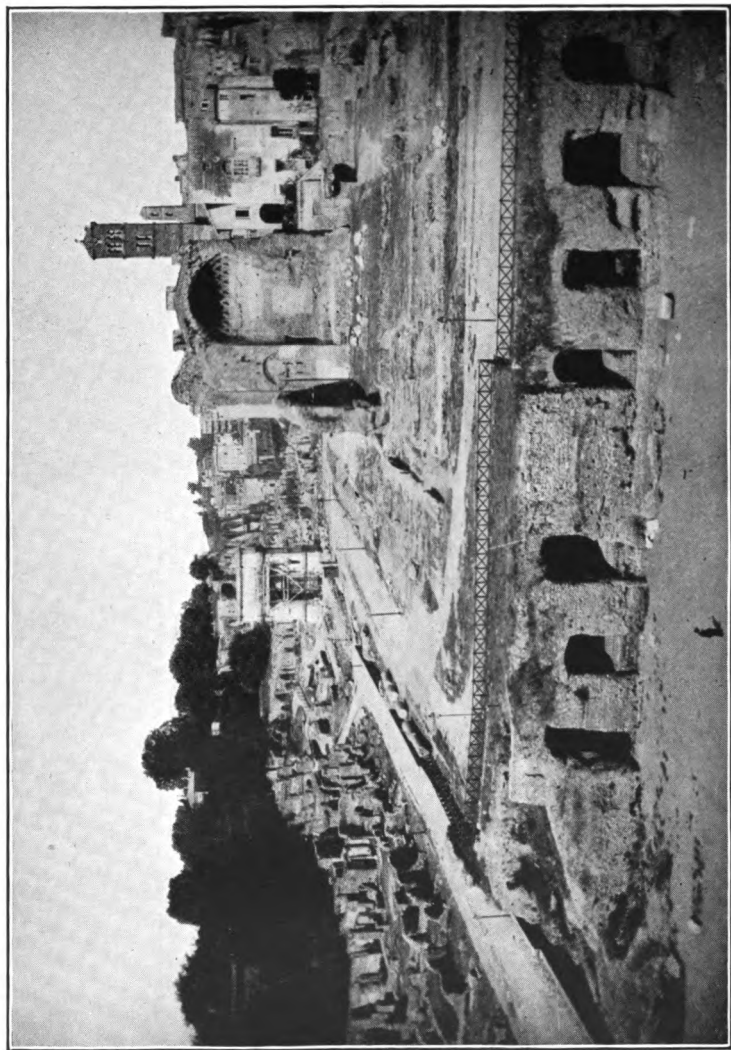
Brother Librarian:
[st.maryshermitage\(at\)hermitsofsaintbruno.org](mailto:st.maryshermitage(at)hermitsofsaintbruno.org) ,

<https://hermitsofsaintbruno.org> ,

<https://www.facebook.com/CremaSantaMaria/>

The Catholic University Classical Series

Edited by ROY J. DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.



ARCH OF TITUS AND TEMPLE OF VENUS AND ROME FROM COLOSSEUM.

A FIRST LATIN BOOK FOR CATHOLIC SCHOOLS

By

ROY JOSEPH DEFERRARI, M.A., Ph.D.

*Associate Professor of Greek and Latin at The Catholic University
of America*

WASHINGTON, D. C.
THE CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS

1921

✓
Educ T 919.21.320

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & CO.
DEC 11 1930

COPYRIGHT 1921
BY THE
CATHOLIC EDUCATION PRESS

NATIONAL CAPITAL PRESS
BOOK MAKERS

PREFACE

In preparing the present book, the author has endeavored primarily to present all the essentials of Latin grammar in the simplest possible way.

By far the majority of first year Latin books completely ignore the order of subjects as treated in the Latin grammar and mingle the study of forms with the study of syntax. The reason for this, it is said, is to lend variety, and thereby an added interest to the work of the first year. In very recent years, too, beginners' Latin books have had a tendency to load their pages with an excess of material regarding the relationship between Latin and English. This, too, is done in the hope of increasing the interest of beginners in their early study of the language.

The purpose of all these innovations is worthy, indeed, but the real purpose of the beginners' book seems to have been forgotten. The first Latin book should aim to give the student a complete mastery of the forms and of the essentials of syntax, all within the compass of a year's work, in order that in the second year he may study intelligently such Latin as Caesar's "Gallic War," and may at the same time make a more detailed study of the Grammar. This is no easy task for a single year's work, and accordingly the utmost economy should be exercised in selecting the material for study, and the greatest care should be applied to procure the most effective arrangement of this material.

Thus only matters of the greatest importance have been presented here. At the same time we feel sure nothing really essential has been omitted. Since the Latin usually read in the second year is Caesar's "Gallic War," the vocabulary has been made up largely of the words most commonly found therein.

The reading of continuous prose should be started as early as possible, probably at Lesson 30. For this purpose, easy Latin selections with full notes will be found at the back of the book. These bits of prose have been taken from Nepos's "Lives" and Caesar's "Gallic War." Some prayers and hymns of the Church have also been included in this section. These may be read and translated very early in the year's work, and may be memorized very profitably, at least in part.

Since a large portion of the second year's work is a systematic study of the Grammar, the present volume has followed the order of the standard grammars, thereby familiarizing the student at once with the most important tool for his Latin studies. In this way the student will not have to adapt himself to a new system of Latin grammar study so soon after his struggle with the arrangement presented in the first Latin book.

Indeed, as he becomes familiar with the first year book, he at the same time learns the order and arrangement of the Grammar. The orderly arrangement of the Grammar has an intrinsic value in itself, the loss of which has never been counterbalanced by any new arrangement intended to lend increased interest. In the present book, just as in the grammars, the forms to be memorized are presented first, followed by the essentials of the syntax.

The student must have a thorough mastery of the forms before he can study and apply the rules of syntax intelligently. It is then much better to concentrate on this work of pure memory first, even to the distaste of the student, as the interest in the study of Latin will be greatly increased later when he realizes his proficiency in the elements of the language and sees his success in the actual application of these fundamentals.

Since this book has been prepared primarily for Catholic schools, it contains, besides Latin prayers and hymns, the principles of the Italian as well as the "Roman" pronunciation of Latin. It is not our purpose to discuss the merits of these two systems. The so-called "Roman" pronunciation is undoubtedly the nearest approximation to Latin as it was spoken in the classical period of antiquity. The Italian pronunciation has been advocated strongly by the Pope, in an effort to procure some uniformity in the spoken Latin of ecclesiastical gatherings. The various other methods of speaking this ancient tongue, known variously as "Continental," "Modern," etc., have nothing whatever to recommend them except, perhaps, their facility. They consist for the most part of the application of the principles for pronouncing one's own native tongue, whatever it may be, to the speaking of Latin.

Finally we wish to express our sincere gratitude to the Rev. Romain Butin, S.M., Ph.D., of the Catholic University of America, not only for many valuable suggestions, but also for his great interest and practical assistance in preparing the manuscript for the press. Thanks are due also to Rev. T. J. McGourty, Ph.D., and Rev. F. J. Cóln, Ph.D., both of the Catholic University of America, for having read the manuscript and for making noteworthy suggestions.

ROY J. DEFERRARI.

Brookland, D. C.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

INTRODUCTION

	Page
Alphabet.— Sounds.— Roman Method of Pronunciation.— Syllables.— Quantity.— Accent.— Inflections.— Gender.— Italian Pronunciation.....	11-14

Part I.—INFLECTIONS

Lesson

1. First Declension.....	19
2. First Declension (continued).—Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.—Rules of Syntax.....	20
3. Second Declension.....	22
4. Second Declension (continued).....	24
5. Second Declension (continued).—Present Indicative of the Verb <i>sum</i> .—Rules of Syntax.....	25
6. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension.—Rules of Syntax.....	27
7. Adjectives of the First and Second Declension (continued).....	28
8. Third Declension.—Mute Stems.....	30
9. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rule of Syntax.....	32
10. Third Declension (continued).—Liquid Stems.—Rules of Syntax.—Nasal Stems.....	34
11. Third Declension (continued).—I-Stems.—Rules of Syntax....	37
12. Third Declension (continued).—Mixed Stems.....	39
13. Gender in the Third Declension.—Rules of Syntax.....	40
14. Fourth Declension.....	41
15. Fifth Declension.....	43
16. Nine Irregular Adjectives.....	44
17. Adjectives of the Third Declension.....	46
18. Adjectives of the Third Declension (continued).....	48
19. Comparison of Adjectives.—Rule of Syntax.....	52
20. Comparison of Adjectives.....	53
21. Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.....	55
22. Numerals.....	57
23. Numerals (continued).....	58
24. Declension of Numeral Adjectives.....	59
25. Personal Pronouns.....	61
26. Reflexive and Possessive Pronouns.....	62
27. Demonstrative Pronouns.....	64

Lesson	Page
28. Demonstrative Pronouns (continued).....	65
29. The Intensive Pronoun.—Relative and Interrogative Pronouns. —Rules of Syntax.....	66
30. Indefinite Pronouns.....	69
31. Conjugation.—The Four Conjugations.—The Principal Parts of a Verb.—Conjugation of <i>sum</i>	70
32. Conjugation of <i>sum</i> (continued).....	73
33. Indicative Active of <i>amō</i>	75
34. Subjunctive Active of <i>amō</i>	77
35. Active of <i>amō</i> (continued).....	79
36. Indicative Passive of <i>amō</i>	80
37. Passive Voice of <i>amō</i> (continued).—Rule of Syntax.....	82
38. Indicative Active of <i>moneō</i>	84
39. Active Voice of <i>moneō</i> (continued).....	86
40. Indicative Passive of <i>moneō</i>	88
41. Passive Voice of <i>moneō</i> (continued).....	90
42. Active Voice of <i>regō</i>	92
43. Passive Voice of <i>regō</i>	94
44. Passive Voice of <i>regō</i> (continued).....	96
45. Active Voice of <i>audiō</i>	98
46. Passive Voice of <i>audiō</i>	100
47. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation.....	103
48. Verbs in <i>-iō</i> of the Third Conjugation (continued).....	105
49. Deponent Verbs.....	107
50. Periphrastic Conjugations.—Rule of Syntax.....	110
51. Irregular Verbs: <i>possum</i>	111
52. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>dō</i>	113
53. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>ferō</i>	115
54. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>volō, nōlō, mālō</i>	118
55. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>fiō</i>	119
56. Irregular Verbs (continued): <i>eō</i> .—Interrogative Sentences.....	121
57. Defective Verbs.....	123
58. Impersonal Verbs.....	125

Part II.—SYNTAX

59. The Nominative and Vocative Cases.....	129
60. The Genitive Case.....	131
61. The Genitive Case (continued).....	133
62. The Dative Case.....	135
63. The Dative Case (continued).....	136

Lesson	Page
64. The Accusative Case.....	138
65. The Accusative Case (continued).....	139
66. The Ablative Case.....	141
67. The Ablative Case (continued).....	143
68. The Ablative Case (continued).....	145
69. The Ablative Case (continued).....	147
70. Syntax of Adjectives.....	149
71. Syntax of Pronouns.....	151
72. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences.—Hortatory Subjunctive.—Deliberative Subjunctive.....	152
73. The Subjunctive Mood in Independent Sentences (continued).— Optative Subjunctive.—Potential Subjunctive.....	154
74. Commands.—Affirmative.—Negative.....	155
75. Tenses of the Subjunctive in Subordinate Clauses.—Sequence of Tenses.....	156
76. Clauses of Purpose.—Relative Clauses of Characteristic.— Causal Clauses.....	158
77. Clauses of Result.—Concessive Clauses.....	160
78. Temporal Clauses.....	162
79. Temporal Clauses (continued).....	163
80. Substantive Clauses.....	165
81. Substantive Clauses (continued).....	166
82. Indirect Questions.....	168
83. Conditional Sentences.....	169
84. Indirect Discourse.—Subjunctive in Indirect Discourse.....	171
85. The Infinitive.....	173
86. Participles.....	174
87. Gerund and Gerundive.—Principal Rules of Syntax.....	176

Part III.—LATIN FOR TRANSLATION

Latin Prayers: The Sign of the Cross.—The Lord's Prayer.—The Angelical Salutation.—The Apostles' Creed.—Gloria Patri.—The Confiteor.—Salve Regina.—Memorare.—Oremus.....	187
Latin Hymns: Tantum Ergo.—De Nativitate Domini.—De Resur- rectione Domini.—In Passione Domini.—De Cruce Domini.—De Novissimō Iudiciō.....	188
Selections from Nepos: Hannibal.—His greatness as a general, and his hatred of Romans.—Hannibal's vow.—Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps.—The victories in Italy.—	

	Page
He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals.—Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lema.—Hannibal at home. His flight to Antiochus.—He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans.—He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick.—Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem.—By his strategy he defeats Eumenes.—His death by poison.—His historians and his own writings.....	192
Julius Caesar's Gallic Wars, Book III, selections: Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.—Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.—The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their position.—The Romans are attacked by a larger force.—After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally.—The Gauls are completely routed.—Galba goes into winter quarters.....	205
General Latin-English Vocabulary.....	211
English-Latin Vocabulary.....	246

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	= <i>ablative.</i>	inf.	= <i>infinitive.</i>
acc.	= <i>accusative.</i>	interrog.	= <i>interrogative.</i>
adj.	= <i>adjective.</i>	intr.	= <i>intransitive.</i>
adv.	= <i>adverb, adverbial.</i>	lit.	= <i>literally.</i>
c.	= <i>common (gender).</i>	m., masc.	= <i>masculine.</i>
comp.	= <i>comparative.</i>	n., neut.	= <i>neuter.</i>
conj.	= <i>conjunction.</i>	nom.	= <i>nominative.</i>
dat.	= <i>dative.</i>	p., pp.	= <i>page, pages.</i>
decl.	= <i>declension.</i>	pass.	= <i>passive.</i>
dep.	= <i>deponent.</i>	pl., plu.	= <i>plural.</i>
e.g.	= <i>exempli gratia</i> = <i>for example.</i>	prep.	= <i>preposition.</i>
etc.	= <i>et cetera</i> = <i>and so forth</i>	pres.	= <i>present.</i>
f.	= <i>feminine.</i>	pron.	= <i>pronoun.</i>
gen.	= <i>genitive.</i>	rel.	= <i>relative.</i>
i.e.	= <i>id est</i> = <i>that is.</i>	sc.	= <i>supply.</i>
impers.	= <i>impersonal, impersonally.</i>	sing.	= <i>singular.</i>
indecl.	= <i>indeclinable.</i>	sup. super.	= <i>superlative.</i>
indic.	= <i>indicative.</i>	tr., trans.	= <i>transitive.</i>
		w.	= <i>with.</i>

INTRODUCTION

1. This introduction should first of all be read carefully by the pupil, and then used for reference.

Alphabet

2. The Latin Alphabet is the same as the English except that the Latin has no *j* or *w*. *I* is used both as a vowel and as a consonant. Consonantal *i* is printed in some books as *j*.

Classification of Sounds

3. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u**. The other letters are consonants. The diphthongs are combinations of two vowels pronounced as one. They are **ae, oe, au, eu, ui**.

4. Roman Method of Pronunciation

(a) **Vowels**, when long, are pronounced as follows: **ā** like *a* in *father*; **ē** like *e* in *prey*; **ī** like *i* in *machine*; **ō** like *o* in *note*; **ū** like *u* in *rude*.

(b) **Vowels**, when short, are pronounced as follows: **ă** like *a* in *along*; **ĕ** like *e* in *step*; **ĭ** like *i* in *pit*; **ŏ** like *o* in *or*; **ŭ** like *u* in *put*.

(c) **Diphthongs**, being combinations of two vowels, are pronounced as two vowels in quick succession. Thus: **ae** like *ai* in *aisle*; **oe** like *oi* in *coin*; **au** like *ou* in *out*; **eu** like *ē-oo*; **ui** like *oo-ī*.

(d) **Consonants** are for the most part pronounced as in English, but the few exceptions should be noted carefully:

b, d, f, h, k, l, m, n, p, qu, r, x, z are pronounced as in English, but **bs** and **bt** are pronounced as *ps* and *pt*.

c and **g** are always hard as in *come* and *go*.

i as a consonant is like *y* in *yes*.

t is always hard as in *tin*, and never as the sound of *sh* as in English *mention*.

s is always a hissing sound as in *sin*, and never like *z* as in *ease*.

v is always like *w*.

ph, ch, and th are to be pronounced practically like English *p, k, and t*.

Doubled consonants such as **ll, mm, tt**, etc., are not pronounced as in English like single consonants, but an effort should be made to pronounce both members of the combination distinctly.

Syllables

5. A syllable consists of a vowel or diphthong either alone or with one or more consonants. Therefore a word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: **con-ci-pi-ō**, *I perceive*.

In dividing the word into syllables, a single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: **pa'-ter**, *father*.

Where there are two or more consonants between two vowels, as many are joined with the following vowel as can be pronounced with it: **ho'-spes**, *guest*; **mōn-strum**, *omen*.

Compound words are separated into their component parts: **ad-est** (*ad*, *near*; *est*, *he is*), *he is present*.

Double consonants are separated: **pu-el'-la**, *girl*.

The last syllable of a word is called the ultima; the syllable before the last is the penult; and the one before that is the antepenult.

Quantity of Vowels

6. Vowels are long (¯) or short (˘), according to the length of time used in pronouncing them. Thus in English, the *ī* of *machine* takes more time than the *ī* of *pin*. In this book, the long vowels are marked by a horizontal line above them; short vowels are left unmarked.

No definite rules can be given for determining the quantity of Latin vowels. One must become familiar with them by observing and learning the quantity as marked in every part of the book.

A few general rules, however, for determining the quantity of vowels are of great assistance:

1. A vowel is long before **nf**, **ns**, as **īnferō**, *I bring in*; **īnsānus**, *mad*.
2. Vowels resulting from contraction are long, as **cō'-gō** (**cōagō**), *I collect*.
3. Diphthongs are always long, and so need not be marked, as **cāusa**, *cause*.
4. A vowel is usually short before **nt**, **nd**, as **amant**, *they love*; **amandus**, *to be loved*.
5. A vowel is short before another vowel or **h**, as **cō'-pī-a**, *abundance*; **tra'-ho**, *I drag*.

Quantity of Syllables

7. A syllable is long or short according to the length of time consumed in pronouncing it.

A syllable is long or takes a long time in pronunciation when it contains a long vowel or diphthong, as **lēgēs**, *laws*; **aedēs**, *temple*. Such syllables are said to be long by nature.

A syllable is long when it contains a short vowel followed by **x**, **z**, or any two consonants, except a mute¹ followed by **l** or **r**, as **dux**, *leader*; **sacerdōs**, *priest*. Such syllables are said to be long by position.

¹ The mutes are **p**, **b**, **t**, **d**, **c**, **k**, **g**, **q**.

A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by a vowel, by a single consonant, or by a mute with *l* or *r*, as *honor*, *honor*; *hiems*, *winter*; *patria*, *native land*.

Accent

8. In words of two syllables the first receives the stress of the voice or accent, as *te'git*, *it covers*; *te'm plum*, *temple*.

Words of more than two syllables receive the accent on the penult (next to the last) when it is long, otherwise on the antepenult (second before the last), as *amā're*, *to love*; *mi't tere*, *to send*.

EXERCISE

9. Divide the following into syllables. Accent and pronounce carefully, remembering to sound long vowels long, and short vowels short.

The Lord's Prayer

Pater noster, qui es in caelis, sanctificetur nomen tuum. Adveniat regnum tuum; fiat voluntas tua sicut in caelo et in terra. Panem nostrum quotidianum da nobis hodie. Et dimitte nobis debita nostra, sicut et nos dimittimus debitoribus nostris. Et ne nos inducas in tentationem, sed libera nos a malo. Amen.

Inflections

10. **The Parts of Speech** in Latin are the same as in English, except that the Latin has no article: thus, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs, adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections.

11. **Inflection** is the change words undergo in form to show change in meaning. The inflection of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns is called declension; with verbs, conjugation. Adverbs, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections have no inflection.

12. **Declension**.—Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have the following cases:

Nominative, the case of the subject.

Genitive, like English possessive, or objective case with *of*.

Dative, like English objective with *to* or *for*.

Accusative, the case of the direct object.

Vocative, the case of direct address.

Ablative, like English objective with *by*, *from*, *with*, *in*.

Locative.—The traces of another case, the locative, denoting place where, occur in names of towns, and a few other words.

13. Conjugation.—Latin verbs have:

1. Three finite moods: Indicative, subjunctive, imperative; besides infinitives, participles, supines, gerunds, and gerundives.
2. Six tenses: present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect, future perfect.
3. Two voices: Active and passive, as in English.
4. Three persons: First, second, and third, as in English.
5. Two numbers: Singular and plural, as in English.

Gender

14. Latin, just as English, has three genders: masculine, feminine, and neuter.

Gender is determined partly, as in English, by the meaning of the noun, but more frequently by the ending.

15. General rules of gender by meaning.

1. Names of males, and of rivers, winds, months, and mountains are masculine, as: *pater, father; Tiberis, the Tiber; auster, south wind; Iānuārius, January; Apennīnus, Apennines.*
2. Names of females, and of countries, towns, islands, and trees are feminine, as *filia, daughter; Ītalia, Italy; Rōma, Rome; Dēlos, Delos; ulmus, elm.*
3. Indeclinable nouns are neuter, as *nihil, nothing.*
4. The principles for gender by ending will be given later under the different declensions.

16. Italian Pronunciation of Latin.

For those teachers who prefer to teach the Italian pronunciation of Latin, the following general rules may be of assistance:

- (a) In general, vowels in Italian are pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin.
- (b) Diphthongs in Italian are also pronounced as in the Roman pronunciation of Latin, except *ae*, which rarely occurs in Italian. When the diphthong *ae* does appear, it is pronounced as Latin *e*, that is, like *e* in *prey*.
- (c) Of the consonants, the following are to be noted as being different from their regular pronunciation in English.
 - c*, soft before *e* and *i*, like *ch* in *charity*.
 - g*, soft before *e* and *i*, like *j* in *just*.
 - h*, is always silent.
 - r*, as in English, except that it is rolled more.

s, as in English, except that between two vowels it sounds like **z** in dozen.

z, usually like English **ts** in *fits*.

cc, before **e** or **i**, like **tch** in *match*.

ch, before **e** or **i**, always hard, like **k**.

gg, before **e** or **i**, sounds like **dj** in *adjust*.

gh, before **e** or **i**, is hard, like **g** in *game*.

gl, before **i**, like **ll** in *million*.

gn, like **n** in *onion*.

sc, soft before **e** or **i**, like **sh** in *she*.

Double consonants are always pronounced as two separate consonants;

i. e., with double emphasis.

PART I.—INFLECTIONS

Lesson 1

FIRST DECLENSION

17. There are five declensions of nouns, distinguished by the final letter of the stem. It is customary, however, to indicate the declension from the ending of the genitive singular.

Declension	Stem-ending	Gen. Sing. ending
I	-ā-	-ae
II	-o-	-ī
III	-i- or a consonant	-is
IV	-u-	-ūs
V	-ē-	-ēī

FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS

mensa, f., table

18.		Singular	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	mēnsa	<i>a (or the) table</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	mēnsae	<i>a table's, of a table</i>	-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	mēnsae	<i>to or for a table</i>	-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	mēnsam	<i>a table</i>	-am
<i>Abl.</i>	mēnsā	<i>from, with, by, or on a table</i>	-ā
		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	mēnsae	<i>tables, or the tables</i>	-ae
<i>Gen.</i>	mēnsārum	<i>tables', of tables</i>	-ārum
<i>Dat.</i>	mēnsīs	<i>to or for tables</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	mēnsās	<i>tables</i>	-ās
<i>Abl.</i>	mēnsīs	<i>from, with, by, or on tables</i>	-īs

19. The base or that part of the word which remains unchanged in inflection is found by dropping the termination **-ae** of the genitive singular, as **mēnsae**, base, **mēns-**.

20. The vocative case in all declensions is like the nominative, except in certain nouns of the second declension.

21. Latin has no article. Thus **mēnsa** may mean *table, a table, or the table*; and in the plural **mēnsae**, *tables or the tables*.

22. Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in **-ae**: as, **Rōmae**, *at Rome*; **militiae**, *in service*.

23. Most nouns of the first declension are feminine. Names of males, however, are masculine: as, *agricola, farmer; nauta, sailor; porta, port.*

24.

VOCABULARY

agricola, ae, m., farmer.

fābula, ae, f., story.

filia, ae, f., daughter.

incola, ae, m., inhabitant.

insula, ae, f., island.

lūna, ae, f., moon.

nauta, ae, m., sailor.

porta, ae, f., gate.

puella, ae, f., girl.

rēgīna, ae, f., queen.

25.

EXERCISES

1. *Agricola, fabulae, lūna.* 2. *Filiae, incolārum, insulis.* 3. *Nautae, portis, puellas.* 4. *Rēginam, fabulas, agricolārum.* 5. *Insula, lūnis, portās.* 6. *Puella, rēginārum, incolae.* 7. *Agricolās, nautārum, nautās.* 8. *Filia, filiārum, filiis.* 9. *Portis, portam, portae.* 10. *Puella, fabula rēginae.*

26. 1. To the queen, the stories (as subject), from the moon. 2. To the farmer, for the sailors, of the inhabitants. 3. The girls (as direct object), of the story, to the inhabitants. 4. The gate (as subject), by the gates, of the queens. 5. The daughters of the sailor, the inhabitants of the islands. 6. To the girls of the island. 7. With the story of the farmer. 8. From the sailors of the island.

Lesson 2

FIRST DECLENSION (-ā-) STEMS, Continued

27. Present Indicative Active of a Verb of the First Conjugation.

Singular

amō, I love, am loving, do love.

amās, thou lovest, you love, etc.

amat, he, she, it loves.

Plural

amāmus, we love.

amātis, you love.

amant, they love.

All verbs of the first conjugation are inflected like *amō*.

Remember that in Latin the subject of the verb if it is a personal pronoun (I, thou, he, we, etc.) is not expressed unless emphatic. It is implied in the verb.

28.

RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of the verb is always in the nominative case.
2. The verb agrees with the subject in number and person. *filiae amant, daughters love.*
3. The object of the verb is in the accusative case. *poëta amat filiam, the poet loves his daughter.*
4. A noun used with another noun to complete or limit its meaning is put in the genitive case.
filiae agricolae, the daughters of the farmer, or the farmer's daughters.

29.

VOCABULARY

est, he, she, or it is.
et, conj., and; et... et, both... and.
laudō, I praise.
nōn, adv., not.
rōsa, ae, f., rose.
sagitta, ae, f., arrow.
silva, ae, f., forest.
stella, ae, f., star.
sunt, they are.
terra, ae, f., land, country.
ubi, adv., where, when.
vāstō, I lay, waste.
via, ae, f., road, street.
vocō, I call, I summon.

N.B.—It is very important for the student to remember from the outset that the order of words in a Latin sentence is free. Although it may be stated that usually the subject and object (if they exist) of a Latin sentence come first and the verb last, this is by no means always so. Therefore it is very necessary that the student analyze strictly every sentence which he translates. That is, he should understand exactly the relation of one word to another.

EXERCISES

30. 1. Terram agricolae vāstant. 2. Incolae nautās vocant. 3. Et stellās et lūnam amāmus. 4. Rōsās laudās. 5. Silvam laudātis. 6. Vias silvae puella laudat. 7. Sagittās nōn amō. 8. Ubi est¹ rēgina

¹ est, third sing. ind. of *sum*. Translate *is*.

insulae? 9. Incolae terrae vāstant. 10. Fīliae nautae silvam laudant. 11. Agricolaēs et nautās vocātis. 12. Sagittās agricolae laudās. 13. Silvam laudās. 14. Silvās agricolae vāstant.

31. 1. We love the moon and the stars. 2. We praise the farmer's daughter. 3. They lay waste the forests of the country. 4. He summons both the farmers and the sailors. 5. The inhabitants of the island are calling. 6. The farmer does not like roses. 7. Where is the star?

Lesson 3

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-): STEMS

32. Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us or -um.

amicus, m., *friend*.

	Singular	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	amicus <i>a (or the) friend</i>	-us
<i>Gen.</i>	amicī <i>a friend's, of a friend</i>	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	amicō <i>to or for a friend</i>	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	amicum <i>a friend</i>	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	amicō <i>from, with, by a friend</i>	-ō
	Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	amicī <i>friends, or the friends</i>	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	amicōrum <i>friends', of friends</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	amicīs <i>to or for friends</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	amicōs <i>friends</i>	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	amicīs <i>from, with, by friends</i>	-īs

bellum, n., *war*

	Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	bellum	-um	<i>Nom. bella</i>	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	bellī	-ī	<i>Gen. bellōrum</i>	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	bellō	-ō	<i>Dat. bellīs</i>	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	bellum	-um	<i>Acc. bella</i>	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	bellō	-ō	<i>Abl. bellīs</i>	-īs

Stems in -o- with the nominative in -us have a special form for the vocative case, thus, **amicē**, **Marcē**.

33.

VOCABULARY

accūsō, *I accuse.*

amicus, *i*, m., *friend.*

animus, *i*, m., *soul, mind, courage.*

aquila, *ae*, f., *eagle.*

avus, *i*, m., *grandfather.*

auxilium, *i* (*ii*), m., *aid, help.*

Belgae, *ārum*, m. pl., *Belgians, a tribe of Gaul.*

bellum, *i*, n., *war.*

equus, *i*, m., *horse.*

Galli, *ōrum*, m. pl., *Gauls.*

Germānī, *ōrum*, m. pl., *Germans.*

implōrō, *I entreat.*

Italia, *ae*, f., *Italy.*

proelium, *i* (*ii*), n., *battle.*

EXERCISES

34. 1. Equō, equum, equis. 2. Bellum, bellō, bellī. 3. Amīci, amīcōs, amīcōrum. 4. Animum, animi, animis. 5. Proelia, proeliis, proeliōrum. 6. Auxilia, auxiliō, amīce. 7. Belgae Germānōs accūsant. 8. Belgae et Galli auxilium implōrant. 9. Aquila et equus. 10. Avus equum amīci amat. 11. Bella et proelia non amāmus. 12. Amīcōs amātis. 13. Nautae equōs agricolārum vexant. 14. Silvās terrārum et insulārum aquilae amant. 15. Amīcos accūsant et bellum amant.

35. 1. To a friend; of friends; friends. 2. By war; by battles; for a help. 3. Both the Belgians and the Gauls accuse the Germans. 4. They lay waste the land and villages. 5. They entreat the aid of the Gauls. 6. Grandfather likes the farmer's horses. 7. The queen does not like battles and wars.

Lesson 4

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

36. Stems in -o- with the nominative in -er or -ir.

puer, m., boy.		ager, m., field.
stem, puero- .		stem, agro- .
Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	puer ager	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	puerī agrī	-ī
<i>Dat.</i>	puerō agrō	-ō
<i>Acc.</i>	puerum agrum	-um
<i>Abl.</i>	puerō agrō	-ō
Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	puerī agrī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	puerōrum agrōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	puerīs agrīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	puerōs agrōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	puerīs agrīs	-īs

vir, m., man.
stem, **viro-**.

Singular		Case-endings	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	vir	wanting	<i>Nom.</i>	virī	-ī
<i>Gen.</i>	virī	-ī	<i>Gen.</i>	virōrum	-ōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	virō	-ō	<i>Dat.</i>	virīs	-īs
<i>Acc.</i>	virum	-um	<i>Acc.</i>	virōs	-ōs
<i>Abl.</i>	virō	-ō	<i>Abl.</i>	virīs	-īs

Stems in -o- with the nominative in -er or -ir have no special vocative form. The vocative is the same as the nominative.

37.

VOCABULARY

audācia, ae, f., boldness.

castra, orum, n. pl., a camp.

cōpia, ae, f., abundance, plenty; in plur. troops, forces.

dōnum, i, n., gift.

Eurōpa, ae, f., Europe.

filius, i (ī), m., son.

Galba, ae, m., Galba (a man's name).

Graeci, ōrum, m., pl., *Greeks.*

incitō, I incite, urge on.

oppidum, ī, n., *town.*

oppugnō, I attack, assault.

periculum, ī, n., *danger.*

EXERCISES

38. 1. Audāciam Galbae laudat. 2. Galli puerōs incitant. 3. Italia terra Eurōpae est. 4. Cōpiae Graecōrum oppidum oppugnant. 5. Galba pericula amat. 6. Puerī virōs implorant. 7. Pericula castrōrum non amātis. 8. Dōna Graecōrum nōn amō. 9. Eurōpa cōpiās implorat. 10. Et agrōs et oppida Belgārum Germānī vāstant.

39. 1. The Belgians are imploring aid. 2. The troops lay waste the villages and towns of the Gauls. 3. Europe does not like the dangers of war. 4. The troops storm the camp of the Germans. 5. The boldness of the sailors is a danger. 6. The boys like the farmers' daughters. 7. The queen of the island urges on the troops.

Lesson 5

SECOND DECLENSION (-o-) STEMS, Continued

40. Certain peculiarities of inflection.

If **e** is contained in the stem as in **puer**, it appears in all cases. For example, **gener** (gen. **-erī**), *son-in-law*; **presbyter** (gen. **-erī**), *elder, priest*; **socer** (gen. **-erī**), *father-in-law*; **vesper** (gen. **-erī**), *evening*.

If **e** is not contained in the stem as in **ager** (gen. **agri**), the nominative singular is formed by dropping the **o** of the stem and inserting **e** before **r**.

Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** usually contract and form the genitive singular in **-ī** instead of **-īi**. For example, **ingenium**, n. *character* (gen. **inge'nī**); **filius**, m. *son* (gen. **filī**). In such cases the genitive is accented on the penult, even when short.

Town names and a few common nouns have a locative case in **-ī**. For example, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*; **domī**, *at home*; **humī**, *on the ground*.

Most nouns ending in **-us** and **-r** are masculine; those ending in **-um** are neuter.

41. Present Indicative of the Verb **sum**.

Singular	Plural
sum, <i>I am.</i>	sumus, <i>we are.</i>
es, <i>thou art, you are.</i>	estis, <i>you are.</i>
est, <i>he, she, it is.</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>

42. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in apposition.

2. An appositive agrees with its noun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

Galba agricola, Galba, the farmer.

3. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

4. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

Galba est agricola, Galba is a farmer.

43. VOCABULARY

arma, ōrum, n. pl., weapons, arms, armour.

aurum, ī, n., gold.

caelum, ī, n., sky, heaven.

fluvius, ī (īī), m., river.

frūmentum, ī, n., grain.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., Sequani, a tribe of Gaul.

vexō, I harass, annoy.

vīcus, ī, m., village.

vītō, I avoid.

EXERCISES

44. 1. Pericula proeliōrum nōn vitāmus. 2. Es, sumus, sum, sunt.
3. Sēquanī agricolās, incolās vicōrum, vexant. 4. Sēquanī sunt agricolae.
5. Est fluvius periculōrum. 6. Galba, agricola, fluvium amat. 7. Estis amici Sēquanōrum. 8. Dōna auri laudant. 9. Amici sumus Galbae, nautae. 10. Germānī Rōmam, oppidum Italiae, oppugnant. 11. Galli frūmentum incolārum Insulae vāstant. 12. Galba, amicus agricolae, et caelum et stellās laudat. 13. Bella et pericula vitatis. 14. Sunt Belgae, amici Gallōrum.

45. 1. We are friends of Galba, the sailor. 2. You like the road, and avoid the river. 3. We harass the villages of the Sequani. 4. Galba, the farmer, is a friend of the sailors. 5. You are Gauls, friends of the Belgians. 6. You (plural) avoid the dangers of battle. 7. We like the sky, and the moon, and the stars. 8. The queen of the island is a friend of boys and girls.

Lesson 6

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

46. There are two declensions of adjectives, one being a combination of the first and second declensions of nouns, the other having the terminations of the [third] declension of nouns. Adjectives of the first and second declensions have three distinct series of case-endings for the masculine, feminine, and neuter. Each series corresponds respectively to o- stems, a- stems, and neuter o- stems.

47. **Bonus, good;** stems, **bono-, bona-**.

Singular			
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
Nom.	bonus	bona	bonum
Gen.	bonī	bonae	bonī
Dat.	bonō	bonae	bonō
Acc.	bonum	bonam	bonum
Abl.	bonō	bonā	bonō
Plural			
Nom.	bonī	bonae	bona
Gen.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
Dat.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Acc.	bonōs	bonās	bona
Abl.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

48. RULES OF SYNTAX

Adjectives may also be classified according to their use, as attributive or predicate.

An Attributive adjective modifies a noun directly.

bonus amicus, a good friend.

A Predicate Adjective modifies a noun by being connected with it by a verb.

fortūna caeca est, fortune is blind.

The quality of the noun expressed by the attributive adjective is taken for granted, whereas the quality expressed by the predicate adjective is specifically asserted.

All adjectives agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

fortissimī sunt Belgae, the Belgians are the bravest.

49.

VOCABULARY

fēmina, ae, f., *woman*.hortus, i, m., *garden*.iūmentum, i, n., *beasts of burden*.lātus, a, um, *broad*.longus, a, um, *long*.magnus, a, um, *large, great*.multus, a, um, *much; pl., many*.parō, *I prepare*.parvus, a, um, *small*.populus, i, m., *people*.Rōmānus, a, um, *Roman; as a noun, m., a Roman*.victoria, ae, f., *victory*.

EXERCISES

50. 1. Pueri nautae sunt parvi. 2. Fēminae Rōmānae sunt bonae. 3. Hortus est longus et lātus. 4. Rōmāni victoriās magnās amant. 5. Īnsula est magna. 6. Multa iūmenta parātis. 7. Victoria populi Rōmāni est magna. 8. Belgae et Sequani multa bella parant. 9. Cōpiaē Rōmānae multōs agrōs Gallōrum vexant. 10. Viae Rōmae sunt longae, nōn lātae. 12. Galli cōpiam frūmenti et multa iūmenta implōrant. 12. Multa iūmenta parāmus. 13. Hortus parvus est fēminae Rōmānae. 14. Oppida Rōmānōrum sunt magna et multa.

51. 1. The farmer's daughters are good. 2. The island is broad and long. 3. The people like a Roman victory. 4. Many Gauls are ravaging the broad fields. 5. You are getting ready the large beasts of burden. 6. We praise the woman's gardens and many roses. 7. The Roman people like courage and daring. 8. The villages of the Germans are small.

Lesson 7

ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS (Cont.)

52. Adjectives declined like **puer**.**liber, free; stems, libero-, libera-.**

	Masculine	Singular Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	liber	libera	liberum
<i>Gen.</i>	liberī	liberae	liberī
<i>Dat.</i>	liberō	liberae	liberō
<i>Acc.</i>	liberum	liberam	liberum
<i>AbI.</i>	libero	liberā	liberō

		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	liberī	liberae	libera
<i>Gen.</i>	liberōrum	liberārum	liberōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs
<i>Acc.</i>	liberōs	liberās	libera
<i>Abl.</i>	liberīs	liberīs	liberīs

53. Adjectives declined like **ager**.

niger, *black*; stems, **nigro-**, **nigra-**.

		Singular	
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	niger	nigra	nigrum
<i>Gen.</i>	nigrī	nigrae	nigrī
<i>Dat.</i>	nigrō	nigrae	nigrō
<i>Acc.</i>	nigrum	nigram	nigrum
<i>Abl.</i>	nigrō	nigrā	nigrō
		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	nigrī	nigrae	nigra
<i>Gen.</i>	nigrōrum	nigrārum	nigrōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs
<i>Acc.</i>	nigrōs	nigrās	nigra
<i>Abl.</i>	nigrīs	nigrīs	nigrīs

Most adjectives are declined like **niger**. The only adjectives in common use which are declined like **liber**, are **asper**, *rough*; **tener**, *tender*; and **miser**, *wretched*.

54.

VOCABULARY

beātus, a, um, *happy*.

clārus, a, um, *bright, splendid, happy*.

Helvētīī, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii, a Celtic tribe*.

iniuria, ae, f., *injury*.

iustitia, ae, f., *justice*.

lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant*.

liber, era, erum, *free*.

nuntius, ī, (īī), m., *messenger*.

potentia, ae, f., *power*.

pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, pretty*.

servus, ī, m., *slave, servant*.

supero, *I overcome*.

EXERCISES

55. 1. *Feminae et puellae sunt beatae.* 2. *Populus Rōmānus multōs Gallōs superat.* 3. *Lēgātus Rōmānus, vir bonus, pueros et puellās amat.* 4. *Nuntius Helvētiōrum iustitiam et nōn iniuriam implorat.* 5. *Rōmāni sunt populus clārus.* 6. *Galba magnum numerum Gallōrum superat.* 7. *Belgae sunt liberī et beātī.* 8. *Terrae et insulae Eurōpae sunt parvae.* 9. *Nautae Rōmāni sunt asperi et miserī.* 10. *Iustitia, nōn iniuria, est bona.* 11. *Aurum Germānōrum vitāmus; victōriam et iustitiam implorāmus.* 12. *Populus liber est populus beatus.* 13. *Lēgātī Helvētiōrum Rōmānōs vocant.* 14. *Cōpiae Rōmānōrum nuntiōs Graecōrum vexant.* 15. *Servus Galbae, legātī Rōmāni, est niger.*

56. 1. The Helvetii are happy. 2. The slaves of the Roman lieutenants are black. 3. Galba, the lieutenant, likes great victories. 4. The Sequani are free and happy. 5. The rough Gauls lay waste the villages of the Helvetii. 6. Many villages of the Romans are beautiful. 7. The power of a good lieutenant is justice. 8. We praise good servants.

Lesson 8

THIRD DECLENSION

57. The third declension has several distinct classes of stems.¹

I. Consonant—Stems, subdivided into:

- (a) Mute (**p, b; t, d; c, g**) stems.
- (b) Liquid (**l, r**) stems.
- (c) Nasal (**m, n**) stems.

II. *Y*-stems.

III. Mixed Stems. (Consonant stems which have taken over some of the peculiarities of the inflection of *Y*-stems.)

Mute-stems

58. *mīles*, m., *soldier*; stem, *milit-*. *rēx*, m., *king*; stem, *rēg-*.

	Singular		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	mīles	rēx	-s
<i>Gen.</i>	militis	rēgis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	militi	rēgi	-i
<i>Acc.</i>	militem	rēgem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	militē	rēge	-e

¹ Since English words derived from Latin are generally taken from an oblique case, the stem of a Latin word may often be easily determined from a glance at its English derivative; e.g., *mīles* (*milit*-ary, stem *milit*-); *cor* (*cord*-ial, stem *cord*-); *caput* (*capit*-al, stem *capit*-), etc.

		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	militēs	rēgēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	militum	rēgum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	militibus	rēgibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	militēs	rēgēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	militibus	rēgibus	-ibus

Cor, n., *heart*; stem, **cord-**. **caput**, n., *head*; stem, **capit-**.

	Singular		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	cor	caput	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	cordis	capitis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cordī	capitī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cor	caput	wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	corde	capite	-e
	Plural		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	corda	capita	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	capitum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cordibus	capitibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	corda	capita	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	cordibus	capitibus	-ibus

Masculine and feminine nouns with stems ending in a mute form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem.

(a) A dental (**t**, **d**) disappears before **s**, as **mīles**, **nepōs** (stem, **nepōt-**), *grandson*.

(b) A guttural (**c**, **g**) joins with **s** to form **x**, as, **rēx**, **pāx** (stem, **pāc-**), *peace*.

The only neuters with stems ending in a mute are **cor**, **caput**, **lac**, *milk*; and Greek words like **poēma** (**-tis**), *poem*. In these, the nominative singular is the stem without the final consonant.

59.

VOCABULARY

aeger, **ra**, **rum**, *sick*;
altus, **a**, **um**, *high, tall, deep*.
Britannia, **ae**, **f.**, *Britain*.
cōnfirmō, *I establish*.
dīmicō, *I contend*.
eques, **itis**, **m.**, *horseman*; **pl.**, *cavalry*.
Gallia, **ae**, **f.**, *Gaul*.
Hibernia, **ae**, **f.**, *Ireland*.
imperō, *I demand*.

laetus, a, um, glad, delightful.

numerus, i, m., number.

obses, idis, m., hostage.

pāx, pācis, f., peace.

virtūs, tūtis, f., valor.

EXERCISES

60. 1. Britannia est pulchra et Gallia laeta. 2. Virtus multorum equitum. 3. Clarā virtute, clārae virtūtis, clāram virtutem. 4. Rēges Rōmāni, rēges Rōmānos, rēgi Rōmāno. 5. Audacia militum Rōmānorum. 6. Magnus numerus obsidum Gallorum. 7. Rōmāni rēges Gallorum vocant. 8. Rēgina Britanniae multos obsides imperat. 9. Milites Rōmāni castra Gallorum oppugnant. 10. Insula pulchra et parva est Hibernia. 11. Multi rēges potentiam amant. 12. Rēx equitēs laudat. 13. Rēx Britanniae magnum numerum obsidum imperat.

61. 1. The great daring of the cavalry. 2. Of peace, to peace, by peace, hostages. 3. Of hostages, from hostages, heads. 4. The horse-man is tall and large. 5. You praise the valor and daring of the sailors. 6. The soldiers demand justice. 7. Ireland is a beautiful island, and Britain is a large country. 8. The kings of the lands are establishing peace.

Lesson 9

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

Liquid-Stems.

62. Liquid-Stems usually end in **-r**; a few end in **-l**. **cōnsul, m., consul**; stem, **consul-**. **victor, m., victor**; stem, **victor**.

Singular			Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsul	victor	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulis	victōris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsuli	victōri	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulem	victōrem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsule	victore	-e
Plural			Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	cōnsulum	victōrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	cōnsulēs	victōrēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	cōnsulibus	victōribus	-ibus

flos, m., *flower*; stem, **flōr-**. **pater**, m., *father*; stem, **patr-**.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	flōs	pater	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	flōris	patris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	flōrī	patri	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrem	patrem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	flōre	patre	-e

	Plural		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	flōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	flōrum	patrum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flōribus	patribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flōrēs	patrēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	flōribus	patribus	-ibus

Most masculine and feminine nouns and many neuters, with stems ending in a liquid, form the nominative without the case-ending; as, **cōnsul**; **mulier**, *woman*; **cadāver**, *dead body*.

Many **r**-stems ended originally in **s**, hence the nominative **flōs**; **mōs**, *custom*; **aes**, *copper*. In such words the stem readily ends in **-s**, but **s** between two vowels regularly became **r**. Thus, **mōs** (gen. **mōris**); **aes** (gen. **aeris**).

63.

RULE OF SYNTAX

Place where must always be expressed by the ablative with the preposition **in**. Thus **in castrīs**, *in the camp*.

64.

VOCABULARY

agger, **eris**, m., *embankment, rampart*.

arbor, **oris**, f., *tree*.

Caesar, **aris**, m., *Caesar*.

cōnsul, **is**, m., *consul*.

dominus, **i**, m., *lord, ruler*.

glōria, **ae**, f., *glory*.

in, *in, on*, prep. with abl.

pater, **tris**, m., *father*.

poēta, **ae**, m., *poet*.

Rhēnus, **i**, m., *the Rhine*.

socius, **i** (**ii**), m., *comrade, ally, companion*.

timor, **ōris**, m., *fear*.

EXERCISES

65. 1. Flōres patris, cōsulēs Rōmānī. 2. Agger altus, timōribus magnīs. 3. Filiī patris, filiae patrum, patribus bonīs. 4. Arborēs silvae, timōrēs mīlitum, timōre magnō. 5. Arborēs silvae sunt altae. 6. Cōsulēs magnās cōpiās parant. 7. Rhēnus est longus et altus. 8. Timōrēs sociōrum sunt multae et magnae. 9. Poēta Rōmānus arborēs et flōrēs silvae laudat. 10. Fabulae et arma et proelia mīlitum laudant. 11. Equitēs Caesaris sunt multī et bonī. 12. Lēgātī magnās cōpiās et multa iūmenta parant. 13. In altō Rhēnō est parva insula. 14. In parvā insula sunt multae pulchrae arborēs.

66. 1. Of a sick father, in the trees of the forest. 2. By the fears of the allies, the fathers of the consuls. 3. On a high rampart, to Caesar's consuls. 4. The Roman consuls praise the virtue of the soldiers. 5. The trees in the forest are high. 6. Galba, the Roman lieutenant, praises the glory of peace. 7. The soldiers on the ramparts are contending. 8. The ruler of the Belgians is an ally of the Roman people. 9. The fear of Caesar is great. 10. The Roman cavalry harass the Gauls.

Lesson 10

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

67. Liquid-Stems, continued. Neuter nouns.

genus, n., race; stem, gener-. **corpus, n., body, stem, corpor-.**

Singular			Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	genus	corpus	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	generis	corporis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	generī	corporī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	genus	corpus	wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	genere	corpore	-e
Plural			Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	genera	corpora	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	generum	corporum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	generibus	corporibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	genera	corpora	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	generibus	corporibus	-ibus

68. Nasal-Stems

Nouns of this class end in **-n**, which often disappears in the nominative singular.

leō, m., *lion*; stem, **leōn-**. **virgō**, f., *maiden*, stem, **virgin-**.

	Singular		Case-endings.
<i>Nom.</i>	leō	virgō	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnis	virginis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnī	virginī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnem	virginem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	leōne	virgine	-e

	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	leōnēs	virginēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	leōnum	virginum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	leōnibus	virginibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	leōnēs	virginēs	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	leōnibus	virginibus	-ibus

flūmen, n., *river*; stem **flūmin-**

	Singular	Case-endings		Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	flūmen	wanting	<i>Nom.</i>	flūmina	-a
<i>Gen.</i>	flūminis	-is	<i>Gen.</i>	flūminum	-um
<i>Dat.</i>	flūminī	-ī	<i>Dat.</i>	flūminibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flumen	wanting	<i>Acc.</i>	flūmina	-a
<i>Abl.</i>	flumine	-e	<i>Abl.</i>	flūminibus	-ibus

Stems in **-ōn-** have the nominative in **-ō**, as **leō**; **legiō**, *legion*.

Stems in **-din-** and **-gin-** have the nominative in **-ō**, as **virgō**; **ōrdō**, *rank*.

Stems in **-in-** (not **-din-** or **-gin-**) have the nominative in **-en**, as **flumen**, **tībicen**, *flute-player*.

There is only one stem in **-m**, **hiems** (*gen. hiemis*), f., *winter*.

69. RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The ablative, with or without **cum**, is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed.

2. **Cum** is usually used with a noun which has no adjective modifying it. **Cum cūrā labōrant**, *they work with care*. **magnā virtūte pugnāt**, *they fight with great valor*.

70.

VOCABULARY

aut, conj., *or. aut...aut, either...or.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with.*

dēditio, ōnis, f., *surrender.*

dolor, ōris, m., *grief.*

nōmen, inis, n., *name.*

flūmen, inis, n., *river.*

genus, eris, n., *race, kind.*

latrō, ōnis, m., *robber, highway-man.*

sōl, is, m., *sun.*

soror, ōris, f., *sister.*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife, consort.*

vituperō, *I blame.*

• EXERCISES

71. 1. Aut soror aut uxor. 2. Cum dolore, magnā virtūte. 3. Magna flumina, multorum fluminum, multis fluminibus. 4. Nōmina arborum, dēditione, sōle, magnus dolor uxoris. 5. Potentia cum iustitia est bona. 6. Nōmen fluminis est Rhēnus. 7. Nautae cum virtūte dimicant. 8. Milites magnō periculō castra Gallorum oppugnant. 9. Rex dolorem et timorem equitum vituperat. 10. Latrones sunt in lata silva. 11. Dēditionem vicorum dominus imperat. 12. Puella aut militis aut nautae est soror. 13. Dolor patris puerorum est magnus. 14. Galba, cōsul Rōmānus, in aggere cum audaciā dimicat.

72. 1. Of grief, with fear, of rivers. 2. Races, griefs, by names. 3. Either of the sister or of the wife. 4. The grief of the soldier's sister is great. 5. We blame either the Gallic soldiers or Roman cavalry. 6. The Germans attack the rampart of the Roman camp. 7. You blame the rulers of the countries. 8. In the small islands are many beautiful trees. 9. The name of the long river is the Rhine.

REVIEW

73. 1. Agricolae insularum, puellas nautarum, poetis. 2. Insulae silvas vastant. 3. Germāni auxilium implorant. 4. Et agros et oppida Europae vastant. 5. Galli, amici Belgarum, frumentum incolarum vastant. 6. Iumenta Gallorum sunt parva. 7. Populi liberi sunt populi beati. 8. Reges magnum numerum equitum laudant. 9. In parva insulae sunt multae flores et arbores. 10. Nautae magnā virtūte castra Gallorum oppugnant.

Lesson 11

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

74. (I-) stems, Masculine and Feminine

Masculine and Feminine I-stems end in **-is** in the nominative singular, and always have **-ium** in the genitive plural. They have **-is** or **-ēs** in the accusative plural, and a few, like **turris**, have **-im** in the accusative singular, and **-ī** in the ablative singular.

hostis, m., *enemy*; stem, **hosti**. **auris**, f., *ear*.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	hostis	auris	-is
<i>Gen.</i>	hostis	auris	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	hostī	aurī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	hostem	aurem	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	hoste	aure	-e
	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	hostēs	aurēs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	hostium	aurium	-ium¹
<i>Dat.</i>	hostibus	auribus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	hostīs (-ēs)	aurīs (-ēs)	-is, -ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	hostibus	auribus	-ibus

Neuter

75. Nouns of this class end in **-e**, **-al**, or **-ar** in the nominative singular. They always have **-e** in the ablative singular, **-ia** in the nominative, accusative and vocative plural, and **-ium** in the genitive plural. Most of these words lose the final **-i** of the stem in the nominative singular; others retain it as **-e**.

mare, n., *sea*; stem, **mari-**. **animal**, n., *animal*; stem, **animali-**.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	mare	animal	wanting
<i>Gen.</i>	maris	animālis	-is
<i>Dat.</i>	marī	animalī	-ī
<i>Acc.</i>	mare	animal	wanting
<i>Abl.</i>	marī	animālī	-ī

¹ Strictly speaking I-stem nouns are declined just as other nouns of the Third Declension. The **i** of the endings **-ium** (genitive plural) and **-ia** (nom. and acc. neuter plural) do not properly belong to the ending but to the stem.

		Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	maria	animālia	-ia
<i>Gen.</i>	marium	animālium	-ium
<i>Dat.</i>	maribus	animālibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i>	maria	animālia	-ia
<i>Abl.</i>	maribus	animālibus	-ibus

In most words of this class the final **-i** of the stem disappears in the nominative singular. In others it appears as **-e**.

RULES OF SYNTAX

76. The Dative is used with verbs to denote the Indirect Object.
haec Galbae nuntiant, they announce these things to Galba.

77. The ablative is used to denote the means by which anything is accomplished.

Gladiis pugnant, they fight with swords.

78.

VOCABULARY

animal, ālis, n., animal.

auris, is, f., ear.

collis, is, m., hill.

dōnō, give, present.

dux, ducis, m., leader.

hostis, is, m., enemy.

mare, is, n., sea.

māter, tris, f., mother.

nāvis, is, f., ship.

occupō, I take possession of, occupy.

sedile, is, n., seat.

EXERCISES

79. 1. Aurēs, auris. 2. Collium, colle. 3. Animalia, animalī. 4. Multis animalibus, maria alta. 5. Galbae flōrēs dōnō. 6. Animalia in mari altō sunt multa. 7. Hostes magnā audaciā colles occupant. 8. Nautae Rōmāni gladiis nāvēs hostium occupant. 9. In sedili legātī sunt multae flōrēs. 10. Hostibus multum aurum dōnāmus. 11. In aggeribus armīs dimicant. 12. Multi rēgēs pācem nōn cōfirmant. 13. Cōpia flōrum et multa animalia sunt in insulā parvā. 14. Ubi sunt socii Rōmānōrum? 15. Caesar hostēs multis proeliis superat.

80. 1. Animals, to an animal, in the sea. 2. Gifts of gold, mothers of soldiers, in the seats. 3. The ears of the animal, the sailors of the ships,

the cavalry of the enemy. 4. The enemy are taking possession of many lands. 5. On the high mound many soldiers are fighting with weapons. 6. You are giving the woman money. 7. Great fear takes possession of the minds of the Romans. 8. Caesar by means of gold establishes peace with many lands. 9. There are large animals on the small island.

Lesson 12

THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

Mixed i-stems.

81. Mixed i-stems are consonant-stems which have assumed i forms in the plural. Thus they are declined like consonant-stems in the singular, like i-stems in the plural.

urbs, f., *city*; stem, **urb** (i-). **cliēns**, m., *client*; stem **client** (i-).

Singular			Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	urbs	cliēns	<i>Nom.</i>	urbēs	clientēs
<i>Gen.</i>	urbis	clientis	<i>Gen.</i>	urbium	clientium
<i>Dat.</i>	urbī	clientī	<i>Dat.</i>	urbibus	clientibus
<i>Acc.</i>	urbem	clientem	<i>Acc.</i>	urbīs (-ēs)	clientīs (-ēs)
<i>Abl.</i>	urbe	cliente	<i>Abl.</i>	urbibus	clientibus

This class includes:

(a) Nouns in **-ēs**, with genitive in **-is**; as **nūbēs**, *cloud*; **aedēs**, *temple*, etc.

(b) Monosyllables in **-s** or **-x** preceded by a consonant; as **ars**, *skill*; **arx**, *citadel*, etc.

(c) Most nouns in **-ns** and **-rs**; as **cliēns**; **cohors**, *cohort*.

(d) Nouns in **-ās** or **-īs**; as **civitās**, *state*; **lis**, *strife*.

82.

VOCABULARY

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter*.

cīvitās, tātis, f., *state*.

cliēns, clientis, m., *client*.

gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword*.

liberi, ōrum, m. pl., *children* (i. e. *free born*).

mens, mentis, f., *mind*.

mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.

pars, partis, f., *part*.

pauci, ae, a, *few*, used only in pl.

turris, is, f., *tower*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

EXERCISES

83. 1. Civitatēs Gallōrum, caedēs animalium. 2. In montibus altis, gladiis magnis, cum multis clientibus. 3. Timōres multi mentēs militum occupant. 4. Paucae civitatēs iumenta parant. 5. Hostēs magna virtūte altōs montēs oppugnant. 6. Civitatēs Germānōrum pacem implorant. 7. Urbēs Rōmānōrum sunt et magnae at pulchrae. 8. In turribus sunt multi milites. 9. Libertī Galbae sunt in monte altō. 10. Pars civitatis pacem nōn amat. 11. Caedēs hostium est magna. 12. Belgae cum virtūte gladiis dimicant. 13. Libertī clientis sunt in silvā. 14. Caedēs femīnārum et liberōrum in bellō nōn est bonum.¹ 15. Pauca animalia sunt in silvā parvā. 16. In sedilibus sunt gladii regum.

84. 1. In the tower, in the city, in the sea. 2. The kings of the states, the camp of the enemy, the forests of the mountain. 3. With great daring they take possession of the mountain. 4. The cavalry of the Germans contend with the Roman soldiers. 5. The rulers give swords to the lieutenants. 6. The children of the client like flowers. 7. In the forests of the mountains are many beautiful flowers. 8. There are eagles in the trees of the high mountains.

Lesson 13

GENDER IN THE THIRD DECLENSION

85. The following rules may be taken as general guides in determining the gender of nouns in the Third Declension.

1. Nouns in **-er, -es, -ēs, -ex** (gen. **-icis**), **-ō** (gen. **-ōnis**), **-or**, and **-ōs** are masculine.

2. Nouns in **-ās, -is, -ō** (gen. **-inis**), **-iō, -s** (preceded by a consonant), **-ūs**, and **-x** are feminine.

3. Nouns in **-c, -e, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur**, and **-ūs** are neuter.
There are many exceptions, however, to the foregoing rules.

RULE OF SYNTAX

86. The Ablative is used to express Cause, sometimes accompanied by a preposition... **ab, dē, or ex.**

Veneris praesidiō ferox, bold because of the protection of Venus.

ex vulnere aeger, disabled by a wound.

¹ The neuter of an adjective is often used as a substantive. Translate "a good thing."

87.

VOCABULARY

antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.**iuvenis, is, m., young man.****mōs, mōris, m., custom; plur., manners.****nūntiō, I announce.****postulō, I demand.****secrētum, i, n., secret, mystery.****semper, adv., always, ever.****vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.**

EXERCISES

88. 1. Iuvenis boni, iuvenum bonorum, iuveni bono. 2. Magna secrēta, magni sedilis, in magnō sedili. 3. Antiqui mōrēs, antiquos mōrēs, antiquis mōribus. 4. In pulchrā turri, arborēs altae, in magnō mari. 5. Iuvenēs secrēta Galbae nūntiant. 6. Mōrēs antiqui semper sunt boni. 7. Vulturēs et āquilae sunt in altis montibus. 8. Rex hostibus aurum ex timōre dōnat. 9. Multa genera arbōrum pulchrarum sunt in silvā. 10. Nūntiū magnum proelium et dēditionem hostium nūntiant. 11. Hostēs ferōcēs victōriā dōna auri postulant. 12. Galbae, legātō Rōmānō, secrēta hostium nūntiō. 13. Mōrēs Rōmānōrum laudātis. 14. Rōmāni et socii cum principibus hostium pācem cōfirmant. 15. Milites magnā audāciā aggerem et altās turris oppugnant.

89. 1. To the good young men; of the good young man; of the deep rivers. 2. The name of the deep river; the secret of the high tower; the customs of the Romans. 3. The vultures in the trees; many kinds of animals; fear of the enemy. 4. He announces the secret of the high tower. 5. Because of fear he gave the enemy presents of gold. 6. Because of the power of the Romans the enemy makes peace. 7. The troops are happy, and like the dangers of war. 8. The allies of the Romans fight with valor.

Lesson 14

FOURTH DECLENSION (-u-) STEMS

90. Masculines and feminines form the nominative by adding **s** to the stem. Neuters have the stem with the vowel lengthened for the nominative.

fructus, m., *fruit*; stem, **fructu**.

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i> fructus	-us	<i>Nom.</i> fructūs	-ūs
<i>Gen.</i> fructūs	-ūs	<i>Gen.</i> fructuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i> fructuī (ū)	-uī (ū)	<i>Dat.</i> fructibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> fructum	-um	<i>Acc.</i> fructūs	-ūs
<i>Abl.</i> fructū	-ū	<i>Abl.</i> fructibus	-ibus

cornū, n., *horn*; stem, **cornū**-

Singular	Case-endings	Plural	Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Nom.</i> cornua	-ua
<i>Gen.</i> cornūs	-ūs	<i>Gen.</i> cornuum	-uum
<i>Dat.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Dat.</i> cornibus	-ibus
<i>Acc.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Acc.</i> cornua	-ua
<i>Abl.</i> cornū	-ū	<i>Abl.</i> cornibus	-ibus

The stem-vowel is usually weakened to **i** before the ending **-bus**.

Nouns of the fourth declension in **-us** are usually masculine. Those ending in **-ū** are neuter.

A few of the commonest nouns in **-us** which are feminine are **anus**, *old woman*; **domus**, *house*; **manus**, *hand*; **socrus**, *mother-in-law*.

91.

VOCABULARY

collocō, *I place, arrange, station.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).

dē, *concerning*, prep. with abl.

dexter, tra, trum, *right.*

dubitō, *I doubt, am in doubt.*

equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry.*

legiō, ōnis, f., *legion.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand, band, force* (of troops).

peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*

quercus, ūs, f., *oak.*

reliquus, a, um, *remaining.*

senātus, ūs, m., *senate.*

EXERCISES

92. 1. **Manūs, manū, manibus.** 2. **Cornū, cornus, cornuum.** 3. **Fructum, portuī, portuum.** 4. **Senātus Romānus, cornūs, fructū.** 5. **Caesar cum reliquis legiōnibus oppidum oppugnat.** 6. **Timor mentes**

reliquorum militum occupat. 7. De militibus sociorum dubitatis. 8. Equitatum in cornibus collocō. 9. Fructus arborum in parvā insula sunt boni. 10. In dextro cornu peditatum collocatis. 11. Milites senatum Rōmānum accusant. 12. Caesar de virtute legionum Rōmānarum nōn dubitat. 13. Naves in portu nōn sunt Rōmānae. 14. Altae quercus et multi vultures sunt in montibus. 15. Caesar multa secreta senatus nūntiat. 16. Caedes legionum in Britannia est magna. 17. Reges populorum Eurōpae accusamus.

93. 1. Of the harbor, to the senate, concerning the fruits. 2. The bands, in the harbors, the wings. 3. The horns, of the horns, in the senate. 4. Caesar is in doubt about the courage of the legions. 5. Because of the victory the soldiers are demanding gifts of gold. 6. In the harbor is a small island. 7. On the island are many oaks and beautiful flowers. 8. The Roman senate is arranging a peace with the enemy. 9. He places the remaining legions on the right wing.

Lesson 15

FIFTH DECLENSION (-ē-) STEMS

94. The nominative is formed by adding *s* to the stem.

diēs, m., *day*; stem, *diē-*. *rēs*, f., *thing*; stem, *rē-*.

	Singular		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	-ēi
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēi</i>	<i>rēi</i>	-ēi
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diem</i>	<i>rem</i>	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diē</i>	<i>rē</i>	-ē
	Plural		Case-endings
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>diērum</i>	<i>rērum</i>	-ērum
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>diēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	-ēs
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>diēbus</i>	<i>rēbus</i>	-ēbus

The genitive and dative singular ending is *-ēi*, instead of *-ēī*, when a consonant precedes; as *spēi*, *rēi*.

Diēs and *rēs* are the only nouns of the fifth declension which are declined throughout. Except for the nominative and accusative, the plural forms of other nouns are rare.

All nouns of the fifth declension are feminine except **diēs**, and **meridiēs**, *midday*, which are masculine. Even **diēs** is sometimes feminine in the singular.

95.

VOCABULARY

aciēs, **ēī**, f., *line of battle*.
diēs, **diēī**, m., *day*.
exercitus, **ūs**, m., *army*.
fidēs, **ēī**, f., *fidelity, loyalty*.
homo, **inis**, m., *man*.
perniciēs, **ēī**, f., *destruction, ruin*.
rēs, **rēī**, f., *thing*.
spēs, **spēī**, f., *hope*.

EXERCISES

96. 1. Fideī, fidem, de fidē. 2. Acierum, in aciē, aciebus. 3. Spēs victōriæ, spēbus auxili, de multis rēbus. 4. Multārum rērum, dē magnā rē, speī. 5. Legātus Rōmānus dē fidē Gallōrum dubitat. 6. Turrēs magnā spē victoriæ oppugnant. 7. Caesar equitēs in cornibus collocat et cum hostibus dimicant. 8. In aciē Rōmānā sunt multi socii. 9. Belgæ cum parvā manū exercitum hostium oppugnant. 10. Socii Rōmānis multa dē hostibus nūntiant. 11. Caedēs hostium est magna. 12. Spēs senātūs et populī est in virtūte mīlitum. 13. Galli magnā audaciā cum legiōnibus Rōmānis dimicant. 14. In portū sunt multæ nāvēs. 15. Hostēs victōriā multōs obsidēs imperant.

97. 1. In the lines of battle, hope of victory, destruction of the army. 2. Day of hope, by the destruction, for the day. 3. We are in doubt concerning the loyalty of the lieutenant. 4. They announce many things about the war. 5. Because of many great battles, fear possesses the minds of the soldiers. 6. The fidelity of the allies of the Romans is not great. 7. The remaining soldiers like the dangers of war. 8. The general's hopes for victory are small.

Lesson 16

NINE IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

98. Nine adjectives in **-us** or **-er** have the genitive and dative singular of all genders in **-ius** and **-ī** respectively.

These adjectives are,

alius (neuter **aliud**), *other*; **nūllus**, *no*; **sōlus**, *only*;
alter, *the other*; **ūllus**, *any*; **tōtus**, *whole*;
neuter, *neither*; **ūnus**, *one*; **uter**, *which* (of two).

They are declined as follows:

	Singular					
	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<i>Nom.</i>	alius	alia	aliud	alter	altera	alterum
<i>Gen.</i>	alius	alius	alius	alterius	alterius	alterius
<i>Dat.</i>	aliī	aliī	aliī	alterī	alterī	alterī
<i>Acc.</i>	aliū	aliā	aliud	alterum	alteram	alterum
<i>Abl.</i>	aliō	aliā	aliō	alterō	alterā	alterō

The plural is regular, like **bonus**.

<i>Nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>Gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>Dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>Abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	utrō	utrā	utrō

The plural is regular, like **bonus**.

99.

VOCABULARY

aedificium, i, n., *building*.

amor, ōris, m., *love*.

bestia, ae, f., *animal, beast*.

corōna, ae, f., *wreath, crown*.

firmō, *I make firm*.

furor, ōris, m., *rage, fury*.

inimicus, i, *an enemy* (personal enemy as opposed to **hostis**, a public enemy).

narrō, *I relate, tell*.

pariēs, etis, m., *wall*.

saepe, adv., *often, frequently*.

sine, *without*, prep., with abl.

terror, ōris, m., *terror, alarm*.

EXERCISES

100. 1. Aliud aedificium, alterius amōris, alius amor. 2. Tōtius corōnae, tōtī parietī, nullus furor. 3. Nullae bestiae, nullius bestiae, utrōrum parietum. 4. Ūnum aedificium, alius pariēs, neutris corōnis. 5. Rēges tōtius Galliae dīmīcant. 6. Altera corōna est pulchra. 7. Magnō terrore alterum oppidum oppugnant. 8. Milītēs altus legiōnis nōn laudāmus. 9. Populus Rōmānus dē fidē āntus rēgis dubitat. 10.

¹ The form **alterius** is usually used in place of **alius**.

Spes victōriæ milites et aliōs firmat. 11. Galba multas alias fabulas de bestiis narrat. 12. Saepe in castris est magnus terror. 13. Alios equites in cornu collocat. 14. Sine ullō timore alteram turrim oppugnant.

101. 1. Of the whole building; other crowns; no terror. 2. Of another wall; the other animal; another crown. 3. Of neither enemy (personal); in one battle; of the other alarm. 4. The senate and the Roman people are in doubt about the loyalty of the soldiers. 5. One wall of the building is high. 6. The soldiers avoid the dangers of another battle. 7. Neither king likes the country and the people. 8. The lieutenant is telling the other story about the surrender.

Lesson 17

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

102. These adjectives are classified according to the number of endings in the nominative singular, as adjectives of one, two or three endings.

With the exception of comparatives and a few other words all follow the inflection of *ī*-stem. They have *-ī* in the ablative singular, *ium* in the genitive plural, *-is* or *-ēs* in the accusative plural masculine and feminine, and *-ia* in the nominative and accusative plural neuter.

103. Adjectives of One Ending.

Audāx, *bold*; stem, *audac-*. **recēns**, *recent*; stem, *recent-*.

Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	audax	audāx	recēns	recēns
<i>Gen.</i>	audācis	audācis	recentis	recentis
<i>Dat.</i>	audāci	audāci	recenti	recenti
<i>Acc.</i>	audācem	audāx	recentem	recēns
<i>Abl.</i>	audāci	audāci	recenti	recenti

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	audācēs	audācia	recentēs	recentia
<i>Gen.</i>	audācium	audācium	recentium	recentium
<i>Dat.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	recentibus	recentibus
<i>Acc.</i>	audācis (-ēs)	audācia	recentis (-ēs)	recentia
<i>Abl.</i>	audācibus	audācibus	recentibus	recentibus

pār, *equal*; stem, **par-**. **vetus**, *old*; stem, **veter-**.

Singular

	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	pār	pār	vetus	vetus
<i>Gen.</i>	paris	paris	veteris	veteris
<i>Dat.</i>	parī	parī	veterī	veterī
<i>Acc.</i>	parem	par	veterem	vetus
<i>Abl.</i>	parī	parī	vetere	vetere

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	parēs	paria	veterēs	vetera
<i>Gen.</i>	parium	parium	veterum	veterum
<i>Dat.</i>	paribus	paribus	veteribus	veteribus
<i>Acc.</i>	paris (-ēs)	paria	veterēs	vetera
<i>Abl.</i>	paribus	paribus	veteribus	veteribus

Comparatives and **vetus** are declined as pure consonant-stems.

104.

VOCABULARY

aditus, ūs, m., *approach*.
adulēscēns, entis, m., *young man*.
audax, audācis, *bold, daring*.
clēmēns, ntis, *mild, gentle*.
cohors, rtis, f., *cohort*.
concilium, ī, n., *council*.
dēlectō, *I delight*.
dēlibērō, *I deliberate, consult*.
ferax, ferācis, *fertile*.
Haedui, ōrum, m. pl. *Haedui, a Gallic tribe*.
princeps, cipis, m., *chief*.
tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune*.

EXERCISES

105. 1. Alius aditus, nulli adulescentes, illa cohors. 2. Audacis adulescentis, feraces agri, principum clementium. 3. Alii cohorti, aliae cohortes, nullos principes. 4. Audaces principes Haeduorum deliberant. 5. Ager ferax agricolam delectat. 6. Senatus Romanus concilium principum Haeduorum non amat. 7. Tribunus de fide ducum Gallorum dubitat. 8. Milites audaces duces semper delectant. 9. Equites sine timore terram feracem Belgarum vexant. 10. Alteram cohortem in acie collocamus. 11. Nullos milites alterius legionis laudatis. 12. Dux Romanorum est clemens et audax. 13. Flores agrorum feracium sunt pulchrae. 14. Adulescentes de perniciē recentī exercitus narrant.

106. 1. No approach; daring chiefs; of the whole council. 2. The old tribunes; to another cohort; on the other hill. 3. From equal legions; of gentle tribunes; by bold battles. 4. The fertile fields delight the farmers. 5. The Roman leaders and the Gallic chiefs are deliberating. 6. The soldiers are bold because of hope of victory. 7. Daring men do not avoid the dangers of battle. 8. The wreaths of flowers delight the farmer's daughters. 9. The beasts of the forest attack men with fury.

Lesson 18

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION, Continued

107. Adjectives of Two Endings.

levis, *light*; stem, **levi**. **levior**, *lighter*; stem, **levior-**.

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	levis	leve	levior	levius
<i>Gen.</i>	levis	levis	leviōris	leviōris
<i>Dat.</i>	levi	levi	leviōri	leviōri
<i>Acc.</i>	levem	leve	leviōrem	levius
<i>Abl.</i>	levi	levi	leviōre	leviōre
<i>Nom.</i>	levēs	levia	leviōres	leviōra
<i>Gen.</i>	levium	levium	leviōrum	leviōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	levibus	levibus	leviōribus	leviōribus
<i>Acc.</i>	levīs (-ēs)	levia	leviōres	leviōra
<i>Abl.</i>	levibus	levibus	leviōribus	leviōribus

Levior is the comparative of **levis**. All comparatives are regularly declined like **levior**.

Plus, *more*, is used in the singular only as a neuter noun. It is declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	_____	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
<i>Gen.</i>	_____	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
<i>Dat.</i>	_____	_____	plūribus	plūribus
<i>Acc.</i>	_____	plūs	plūres (-īs)	plūra
<i>Abl.</i>	_____	_____	plūribus	plūribus

108. Adjectives of Three Endings.

acer, *sharp*; stem, **ācri-**.

	Singular		
	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ācer	ācris	ācre
<i>Gen.</i>	ācris	ācris	ācris
<i>Dat.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
<i>Abl.</i>	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
	Plural		
<i>Nom.</i>	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
<i>Gen.</i>	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
<i>Dat.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
<i>Acc.</i>	ācrīs (ēs)	ācrīs (-ēs)	ācria
<i>Abl.</i>	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

Celer, *swift*, has the nominative singular **celer**, **celeris**, **celere**, the second **e** being a part of the stem.

109. VOCABULARY

celer, **eris**, **ere**, *swift*.**commūnis**, **e**, *common*.**complūrēs**, **ra**, gen. **ium**, *very many*.**coniurō**, *I conspire*.**crūdēlis**, **e**, *cruel*.**difficilis**, **e**, *difficult*.**equester**, **tris**, **tre**, *equestrian*, *cavalry* (adjective).**fortis**, **e**, *brave*, *courageous*.**incolumis**, **e**, *unharmed*.**nāvālis**, **e**, *naval*.**nōbilis**, **e**, *noble*.**omnis**, **e**, *all*, *every*.**Venetī**, **ōrum**, m. pl., *Veneti*, *a Gallic tribe*.

EXERCISES

110. 1. **Celerium** equōrum, in omnibus agris, nōbiles principes. 2. **Complūribus** **Venetis**, equestri proeliō, proelia nāvālia. 3. **Concilia** commūnia, conciliis commūnibus, militi crūdelt. 4. **Feminae** et liberi sunt incolumēs. 5. Cum militibus celeribus collem oppugnat. 6. **Fortēs** hominēs pericula proeli nōn vitant. 7. **Lēgātī** **Rōmānī** sunt adulēscēntes fortēs et nōbiles. 8. **Complūrēs** **Venetī** sine timōre coniurant. 9.

Römāni et socii in conciliō commūni dēlberant. 10. Tribūni proeliis nāvalibus hostēs superant. 11. Nūntii celerēs populō dē periculis communibūs nuntiant. 12. Hostēs proeliō equestri superat. 13. Omnes aditūs sunt difficilēs. 14. Complūres principēs auxiliū Caesaris implōrant. 15. Fēmina nōbilis est clemens et fortis.

III. 1. Swift messengers; in fertile fields; by cavalry battles. 2. To courageous women; of very many young men; a naval battle. 3. From noble chiefs; of a cruel soldier; from a noble girl. 4. The Roman people are deliberating in common council. 5. The daring young men are unharmed. 6. The messenger announces the destruction of the noble army. 7. Both the Haedui and the Veneti are conspiring. 8. You are praising the soldiers and tribunes of the other legion.

REVIEW

1112. The regular case-endings for the nouns and adjectives of the various declensions are as follows:

	Decl. I	Decl. II	Decl. III	Decl. IV	Decl. V
<i>Nom.</i>	F. -a	M. -us	Singular M.F. -s	N. -us	F. -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ae	-ī	-is (modified stem)	-ūs	-ī (-ē)
<i>Dat.</i>	-ae	-ō	-ī	-ui (-ū)	-ēi (-ē)
<i>Acc.</i>	-am	-um	-em (-im) (like nom.)	-um	-em
<i>Abl.</i>	-ā	-ō	-(ēī) (like nom.)	-ū	-ē
<i>Voc.</i>	-a	-ē		-us	-ēs
			Plural		
<i>Nom. and Voc.</i>	-ae	-a	-ēs	-ūs	-ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	-ārum	-ōrum	-um (-ī) um	-uum	-ērum
<i>Dat. and Abl.</i>	-īs	-īs	-ibus (-ubus)	-ibus (-ubus)	-ēbus
<i>Acc.</i>	-ās	-a	-ēs (īs)	-ūs	-ēs

Lesson 19

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

113. In Latin, as in English, adjectives have three degrees of comparison—the Positive, the Comparative, and the Superlative.

The Comparative is regularly formed by adding **-ior** (neut. **-ius**), the Superlative by adding **-issimus** (**-a**, **-um**) to the genitive singular of the Positive minus its ending.

114. Participles used as adjectives are compared in the same manner.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
altus , <i>high</i>	altior	altissimus
fortis , <i>brave</i>	fortior	fortissimus
fēlix , <i>happy</i>	fēlicior	fēlicissimus
amāns , <i>loving</i>	amāntior	amantissimus

115. Adjectives in **-er** form their Comparative in the regular way, but form the Superlative by adding **-rimus** to the nominative of the Positive.

asper , <i>rough</i>	asperior	asperrimus
celer , <i>swift</i>	celerior	celerrimus
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i>	pulchrior	pulcherrimus

116. Six adjectives in **-lis** form the superlative by adding **-limus** to the genitive of the Positive minus its ending. The comparative is regular.

facilis , <i>easy</i>	facilior	facillimus
difficilis , <i>difficult</i>	difficilior	difficillimus
dissimilis , <i>unlike</i>	dissimilior	dissimillimus
gracilis , <i>slender</i>	gracilior	gracillimus
humilis , <i>low</i>	humilior	humillimus
similis , <i>like</i>	similior	simillimus

117. Other adjectives in **-lis** are compared regularly: as, **utilis**, *useful*, **utilior**, **utilissimus**.

RULES OF SYNTAX

118. Comparison is expressed by using **quam**, *than*, or by the ablative without **quam**.

nihil est amabilius quam virtus: nihil est virtūte amabilius,
nothing is more attractive than virtue.

119. Superlativeness is expressed by the genitive. **asperrima viārum**, *the roughest of the roads*.

120.

VOCABULARY

asper, *era, erum*, *rough*.

facilis, *e*, *easy*.

felix, *felix*, *fortunate, happy*.

gracilis, *e*, *slender*.

humilis, *e*, *low, humble*.

similis, *e*, *like*.

ūtilis, *e*, *useful*.

vallis, *is, f.*, *valley*.

EXERCISES

121. 1. Flōres graciliōres, urbium pulcherrimarum, collēs asperrimae.
2. In vallibus altissimis, hominum felicitum, filiis simillimis. 3. Aditū difficillimū, via asperior, flumina altiōra. 4. Belgae sunt fortissimi omnium Gallōrum. 5. Viae Galliae sunt asperrimae. 6. Rōma est urbs pulcherrima. 7. In exercitū Rōmānōrum milites sunt fortissimi. 8. In Italiā est magnus numerus hominum felicissimōrum. 9. Filiae agricolae sunt pulchriōres. 10. Flūmina Galliae nōn sunt altiōra quam flūmina Italiae. 11. Filius altior est quam pater. 12. Filia est pulchrior matrē. 13. Rōma, felicissima urbs totius terrae.

122. 1. Humbler soldiers; of the most difficult approach; in the more beautiful valley. 2. By the rougher road; of the bravest soldiers; to the happiest legion. 3. The flowers of the woods are most beautiful. 4. The mountains of Gaul are higher than the mountains of Italy. 5. The sailor is humbler than the soldier. 6. The roads in the valley are very beautiful.

Lesson 20

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES, Continued

123. The following adjectives vary the stem in comparison.

bonus, *good*

malus, *bad*

magnus, *great*

parvus, *small*

multus, *much*

melior, *better*

pēior, *worse*

māior, *greater*

minor, *smaller*

plūs, *more*

optimus, *best*

pessimus, *worst*

maximus, *greatest*

minimus, *smallest*

plurimus, *most*

124. The positive of the following adjectives derived from preposition have a positive only in special cases.

exterus , <i>outside</i>	exterior , <i>outer</i>	{ extrēmus , <i>outermost</i> extimus , <i>outermost</i>
inferus , <i>below</i>	inferior , <i>lower</i>	{ infimus , <i>lowest</i> imus , <i>lowest</i>
posterus , <i>following</i>	posterior , <i>later</i>	{ postrēmus , <i>last</i> postumus , <i>late-born</i>
superus , <i>above</i>	superior , <i>higher</i>	{ suprēmus , <i>highest</i> summus , <i>highest</i>

125. The following adjectives lack the positive entirely.

citerior , <i>on this side</i>	citimus , <i>nearest</i>
dēterior , <i>worse</i>	dēterrimus , <i>worst</i>
interior , <i>inner</i>	intimus , <i>inmost</i>
ōcior , <i>swifter</i>	ōcissimus , <i>swiftest</i>
prior , <i>former</i>	prīmus , <i>first</i>
propior , <i>nearer</i>	proximus , <i>nearest, next</i>
ulterior , <i>farther</i>	ultimus , <i>farthest</i>

126.

VOCABULARY

Allobrogēs, *um*, m. pl., *Allobroges*, a Gallic tribe.

altitūdō, *inis*, f., *depth, height*.

Avāricum, *i*, n., *Avaricum*, a Gallic town.

civis, *is*, m., *citizen, fellow-citizen*.

Genava, *ae*, f., *Geneva*, a town of the Allobroges.

laetitia, *ae*, f., *joy, gladness*.

patria, *ae*, f., *native country*.

templum, *i*, n., *temple*.

ventus, *i*, m., *wind*.

EXERCISES

127. 1. Meliōra castra, maximum oppidum, via peior. 2. Laetitia maiōre, venti minōres, milites optimi. 3. Summus mōns, in oppidis proximi, summa virtūs. 4. Venti ōcissimi agros vastant. 5. Laetitia civium est maior quam laetitia militum. 6. Genava est optimum oppidum Allobrogum. 7. Collis proximus est altior et asperior. 8. Equitēs minimo periculō dimicant. 9. Ducēs Gallōrum maximās cōpiās parant. 10. In primā acie sunt milites fortissimi. 11. Altitūdō fluminis Italiae nōn est maxima. 12. Maximā virtūte oppidum ultimum oppugnant.

128. 1. Of the last legion; the highest mountains; to the first soldiers. 2. Of the swiftest messengers; in the nearest towns; the lowest mountain

3. The outer wall; from the higher place; with the least joy. 4. The first cohort fights with the greatest valor. 5. The swiftest messengers of the Romans tell about the battle. 6. A legion is larger than a cohort.

REVIEW

129. 1. Hostēs in nāve sunt multi. 2. Dux collem armis occupat. 3. In turribus sunt multi mīlites. 4. Rōmānī ferōcēs victōriā altas turris oppugnant. 5. Multi portūs in Italiā sunt boni. 6. Magna perniciēs est in aciē. 7. Aliōs equitēs in alterō cornū collocat. 8. De perniciē recentī exercitūs narrāmus. 9. Complūrēs hostēs sine timōre in conciliō commūni dēlberant. 10. Mīlites Italiæ nōn sunt fortiōres quam mīlites Galliæ. 11. Maximā virtūte oppidum proximum oppugnant.

Lesson 21

FORMATION AND COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

130. Adjectives of the first and second declensions form the adverb by dropping the ending of the genitive singular and adding **-ē**.

Adjective.	Adverb.
cārus , <i>dear</i> .	cārē , <i>dearly</i> .
miser , <i>wretched</i> .	miserē , <i>wretchedly</i> .
pulcher , <i>beautiful</i> .	pulchrē , <i>beautifully</i> .

131. Adjectives of the third declension form the adverb by adding **-ter** to the stem. Stems (chiefly participles) ending in **-nt** drop **-t** before adding **-ter**.

Adjective.	Stem.	Adverb
ācer , <i>keen</i>	ācri-	ācritēr , <i>keenly</i>
fortis , <i>brave</i>	forti-	fortitēr , <i>bravely</i>
prūdēns , <i>wise</i>	prūdent-	prūdentēr , <i>wisely</i>

132. In some adjectives the ablative singular serves as the adverb, in others the neuter accusative singular.

facilis , <i>easy</i>	facile , <i>easily</i>
multus , <i>much</i>	multum , <i>much</i>
prīmus , <i>first</i>	prīmō , <i>at first</i>

The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter singular of the comparative of the adjective. To form the superlative, change the final **-us** of the superlative of the adjective to **-ē**.

Adjective	Adverb	Comparative	Superlative
cārus	cārē, <i>dearly</i>	cārius	cārissimē
pulcher	pulchrē, <i>beautifully</i>	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
bonus	bene, <i>well</i>	melius	optimē
facilis	facile, <i>easily</i>	facilius	facillimē
audāx	audācter, <i>boldly</i>	audācius	audācissimē

133. Certain adverbs are peculiar in comparison.

magnopere, <i>greatly</i>	magis	maximē
multum, <i>much</i>	plūs	plūrimum
nōn multum parum	minus	minimē
saepe, <i>often</i>	saepius	saepissimē
prope, <i>near</i>	propius	proximē
diū, <i>long</i>	diūtius	diūtissimē

134.

VOCABULARY

ācritē, *sharply, fiercely.*
 audācter, *courageously.*
 cārus, a, um, *dear.*
 cogitō, *I think.*
 dēfensio, ōnis, f., *defense.*
 diū, adv., *a long time.*
 fortiter, *bravely.*
 fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
 impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*
 magis, *more, rather; comparative of magnopere.*
 magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*
 maximē, *especially; superlative of magnopere.*
 miser, a, um, *wretched, unfortunate.*
 parum, adv., *little.*
 perturbō, *I agitate, disturb.*
 prope, adv., *near.*
 prūdēns, entis, *skilled, wise.*
 pugnō, *I fight.*
 saltō, *I dance.*
 tardō, *I retard, check.*

EXERCISES

135. 1. Misere, fortiter, primo, carius, optimē, facillimē. 2. Diutissimē, propius, saepissimē, maximē, peius. 3. Minus bene, minimē facile,

acerrime, audacter. 4. *Militēs Rōmānī acriter et audacter dimicant.* 5. *Oppidum diū et fortiter oppugnant.* 6. *Agricolae magis de agris feracibus quam de proeliis cogitant.* 7. *Galli impetum Rōmānōrum fortiter tardant.* 8. *Filiae consulis flōres silvae maxime amant.* 9. *Timor perniciēi exercitum magnopere perturbat.* 10. *Nautae minus fortiter pugnant.*

136. 1. Bravely; more wretchedly; less easily. 2. Most fiercely; most courageously; most easily. 3. The sailor's daughter dances very beautifully. 4. The Belgians fight more bravely than the Helvetians. 5. The soldiers are thinking more of flight than of the attack. 6. The strong defense of the town greatly retards the attack. 7. They consult very wisely about the defense of the camp.

Lesson 22

NUMERALS

137. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes.

1. Cardinals, answering the question, How many?
2. Ordinals, answering the question, In what order?
3. Distributives, answering the question, How many at a time?

138. The student should memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals, but should simply read the Distributives.

The declension of numerals will be treated in a later lesson (24).

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
1. <i>ūnus, one</i>	<i>prīmus, first</i>	<i>singulī, one each</i>
2. <i>duo</i>	<i>secundus</i>	<i>bīnī</i>
3. <i>trēs</i>	<i>tertius</i>	<i>ternī, trīnī</i>
4. <i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	<i>quaternī</i>
5. <i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīntus</i>	<i>quīnī</i>
6. <i>sex</i>	<i>sextus</i>	<i>sēnī</i>
7. <i>septem</i>	<i>septimus</i>	<i>septēnī</i>
8. <i>octo</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	<i>octōnī</i>
9. <i>novem</i>	<i>nonus</i>	<i>novēnī</i>
10. <i>decem</i>	<i>decimus</i>	<i>dēnī</i>
11. <i>ūndecim</i>	<i>undecimus</i>	<i>ūndēnī</i>
12. <i>duodecim</i>	<i>duodecimus</i>	<i>duodēnī</i>
13. <i>tredecim</i>	<i>tertius decimus</i>	<i>ternī dēnī</i>
14. <i>quattuordecim</i>	<i>quārtus decimus</i>	<i>quaternī dēnī</i>
15. <i>quindecim</i>	<i>quīntus decimus</i>	<i>quīnī dēnī</i>

16. sēdecim	sextus decimus	sēnī dēnī
17. septendecim	septimus decimus	septēnī dēnī
18. duodēviginti	duodēvicēsimus	duodēvicēnī
19. ūndēviginti	ūndēvicēsimus	ūndēvicēnī
20. vīgintī	vicēsimus	vicēnī

139.

VOCABULARY

annus, ī, m., year.

certāmen, inis, n., contest, strife.

facile, easily.

mensis, is, m., a month.

poēm, ātis, n., a composition in verse, a poem.

EXERCISES

140. 1. Duo nūntiī dē certāmine bene narrant. 2. Duodecim mensēs sunt in annō. 3. Trēs milites magnā audāciā aggerem oppugnant. 4. Caesar trēs impetūs Gallōrum facile tardat. 5. Quīndecim equitēs agrōs agricolārum vexant.

141. 1. Eighteen horsemen retard the attack of the enemy. 2. Ten soldiers are in the road. 3. The many trees of the forest greatly delight the children. 4. The ten islands in the river are very beautiful places. 5. The two consuls do not like the fears of the soldiers.

Lesson 23

NUMERALS, Continued

142. Memorize thoroughly the following Cardinals and Ordinals, but simply read the Distributives.

Cardinals	Ordinals	Distributives
21. vīgintī ūnus ūnus et vīgintī	vicēsimus primus ūnus et vicēsimus	vicēnī singulī singulī et vicēnī
22-27. are formed just as 21.		
28. duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsimus	duodētricēnī
29. ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsimus	ūndētricēnī
30. trīgintā	tricēsimus	tricēnī
40. quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsimus	quadrāgēnī
50. quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsimus	quīnquāgēnī
60. sexāgintā	sexāgēsimus	sexāgēnī

70. septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus	septuāgēnī
80. octōgintā	octōgēsīmus	octōgēnī
90. nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus	nōnāgēnī
100. centum	centēsīmus	centēnī
101. centum ūnus	centēsīmus primus	centēnī singuli
centum et ūnus		
200. ducentī	ducentēsīmus	ducentī
300. trecentī	trecentēsīmus	trecentī
400. quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus	quadringēnī
500. quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus	quīngēnī
600. sescentī	sescentēsīmus	sescentī
700. septingentī	septingentēsīmus	septingēnī
800. octingentī	octingentēsīmus	octingēnī
900. nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus	nōngēnī
1000. mille	millēsīmus	singula millia
100,000. centum millia	centiēs millēsīmus	centēna millia

143. VOCABULARY

clāmō, *I call, cry out.*clāmor, ōris, m., *loud cry, noise.*error, ōris, m., *wandering, mistake.*forum, ī, n., *market place.*īnstō, *I press on.*nox, noctis, f., *night.*

EXERCISES

144. 1. Multi clāmōres ē castris clāmant. 2. In forō sunt duode-triginta milites. 3. Triginta cohortes semper instant. 4. Optimi milites de secundō impetū deliberant. 5. Miles tertius decimus in acie est altis-simus. 6. Milles hostes in silvā instant.

145. 1. Ten horsemen alone check the first attack. 2. Twenty-two soldiers are in the market place. 3. The leader demands a third attack. 4. Thirty-eight Gauls disturb the town. 5. A thousand cries call out in the night.

Lesson 24

DECLENSION OF NUMERAL ADJECTIVES

146. Of the Cardinals only ūnus, duo, trēs, the hundreds above one hundred, and mille when used as a noun, are declined.

For the declension of ūnus see Lesson 16.

Duo, two, and trēs, three, are declined as follows:

<i>Nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>Gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Acc.</i>	duōs, duo	duās	duo
<i>Abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>Nom.</i>	trēs	tria	
<i>Gen.</i>	trium	trium	
<i>Dat.</i>	tribus	tribus	
<i>Acc.</i>	trēs (trīs)	tria	
<i>Abl.</i>	tribus	tribus	

147. The Cardinals from four to ten, and all the tens from ten to one hundred are indeclinable. Hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus**.

148. **Mille** in the singular is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a noun (followed by the genitive of the objects enumerated) and is declined. Thus, **mille hominēs, a thousand men; duo milia hominum, two thousand men** (literally, *two thousand of men*).

Plural

<i>Nom.</i>	milia
<i>Gen.</i>	mīlium
<i>Dat.</i>	mīlibus
<i>Acc.</i>	milia
<i>Abl.</i>	mīlibus

149.

VOCABULARY

advocō, I call or summon to.

cēlō, I keep secret, conceal.

conditor, ōris, m., builder, founder.

disturbō, I throw into disorder, disturb.

iam, adv., now.

messis, is, f., harvest.

prodigium, ii, n., unusual sign, foreboding.

probus, a, um, good, honest, virtuous.

EXERCISES

150. 1. Duōrum prodigiōrum, cum tribus filiis, ducentis equitibus. 2. Mille equites, tria milia hominum, cum duobus cohortibus. 3. In tribus oppidis, duo prodigia, tria nomina. 4. Caesar duas legiones iam

advocat. 5. Puella trēs flōrēs pulchrās cēlat. 6. Trecenti hominēs sunt in oppidō. 7. Gallī trēs turrēs magnō impetū oppugnant. 8. Messis in agrīs Rōmānōrum est maxima. 9. Duo sunt conditōrēs urbis Rōmae. 10. Trēs hominēs probi auxilium populi Rōmāni implōrant.

151. 1. To three soldiers; in two towns; with one lieutenant. 2. For three thousand men; from a thousand women; in two thousand cities. 3. Three thousand cavalry; with two hundred soldiers; of one cohort. 4. Caesar summons two thousand horsemen to the town. 5. The two founders of the city are very great men. 6. More than one prodigy disturbs the Roman people. 7. The three legions retard the attack of the many thousand Gauls. 8. Three hundred horsemen are ravaging the harvest in the fields.

Lesson 25

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

152. The Personal Pronouns of the first and second persons are declined as follows:

	Singular		Plural	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego, I	tu, you	nōs, we	vōs, you
<i>Gen.</i>	meī	tuī	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi, mī	tibi	nōbis	vōbis
<i>Acc.</i>	mē	tē	nōs	vōs
<i>Abl.</i>	mē	tē	nōbis	vōbis

153. The personal pronoun of the third person is **is, he; ea, she; id, it.** For the declension, see Lesson 28.

154. VOCABULARY

amicē, *in a friendly way* Lesson 28.

culpō, *I blame.*

Dumnorīx, igis, *m., Dumnorix, a leader of the Haedui.*

epistula, *ae, f., letter.*

fructus, ūs, *m., fruit (especially of trees).*

frustrā, *adv., in vain.*

grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*

imperātor, ōris, *m., commander.*

inter, *prep, with acc., among, between.*

iūdicō, *I judge, adjudge.*

memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*

officium, i, n., *duty.*

praestō, I *perform.*

probō, I *approve.*

quoque, *also*, always follows word it modifies.

sollicitō, I *rouse, instigate.*

verbum, i, n., *word.*

EXERCISES

155. Mihi, tibi, nōs, vōs. 2. Mē, tē, nōbis, vōbis. 3. Ego, nostrum, tu, vestrum. 4. Mi, mei, tui, nostri. 5. Ducēs nōs culpant. 6. Tē probāmus. 7. Imperātor mē et tē acriter accūsāt. 8. Mē quoque sollicitās. 9. Memoria tui mihi est grāta. 10. Verba Galbae in epistula tibi nōn sunt grāta. 11. Vōs milites frustrā sollicitātis. 12. Nōs officia semper praestāmus. 13. Fructūs agrōrum agricolis sunt grātī.

156. 1. We; us; you; to us. 2. You (acc. sing.); to you; me; to me. 3. To you (plu.); of us; of you (sing.); of you (plu.). 4. The soldier calls the men to us. 5. The letter of Dumnorix is not pleasing to you and to me. 6. He gives you many duties. 7. The generals rouse us in vain.

Lesson 26

PRONOUNS, Continued

Reflexive Pronouns

157. Reflexive Pronouns refer to the subject of the sentence or clause in which they stand. Thus in "I see myself," "myself" is a reflexive pronoun referring to the subject "I."

For the first and second persons of the Reflexive Pronouns, the ordinary Personal Pronouns are used.

Only the third person has a special form, and is declined as follows:

Gen. suī, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Dat. sibi, to himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Acc. sē or sēsē, himself, herself, itself, themselves.

Abl. sē or sēsē, with himself, herself, itself, themselves.

The Reflexive Pronoun of the third person serves for all genders and for both numbers.

POSSESSIVE ADJECTIVES AND PRONOUNS

158. Possessive Adjectives are declined as adjectives of the first and second declensions. Thus,

First Person

Singular, **meus, -a, -um, my.**

Plural, **noster, nostra, nostrum, our.**

Second Person

Singular, **tuus, -a, -um, thy, your** (of one person).

Plural, **vester, vestra, vestrum, your** (of more than one).

Third Person

Sing. and Plu., **suus, -a, -um, his, her, its, their.**

Suus is always reflexive as in **māter liberōs suōs amat**, *the mother loves her children*. Where not reflexive, *his, her, its* are regularly expressed by the genitive singular of **is, i. e., eius**; and *their*, by the genitive plural, **eōrum, eārum**.

Possessive Pronouns exist in Latin only when Possessive Adjectives are used substantively.

est meum, it is mine.

159.**VOCABULARY**

calamitas, ātis, f., misfortune, calamity.

fortitūdo, inis, f., strength, bravery.

gravis, e, heavy, grievous, serious.

metus, ūs, m., fear, dread.

opus, eris, n., work, labor.

sēditio, ōnis, f., uprising, revolt.

sonitus, ūs, m., noise, sound.

suāvis, e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable.

EXERCISES

160. 1. **Sui, sē, sibi, sēsē.** 2. **Calamitas mea, metus vester, officiōrum vestrōrum.** 3. **Pater meus, māter nostra, filia tua.** 4. **Omnēs milites boni officia sua praestant.** 5. **Lēgātus tuum gladium mihi donat.** 6. **Puer patrem suum ad sē vocat.** 7. **Tu tua opera semper probās.** 8. **Metus noster imperātorem sollicitat.** 9. **Rōmāni suis armis fortiter dimicant.** 10. **Seditio militum nostrōrum est gravis.** 11. **Galli cum fortitudine et virtūte nōn semper pugnāt.** 12. **Sonitus sēditōnis nostrōrum est maximus.**

161. 1. To himself; to themselves; from herself. 2. My horse; your daughter; our children; your (plu.) misfortune. 3. The father calls the boys to him (= himself). 4. Your leader gave us many duties. 5. The commander praises his men. 6. Your daughter is calling me. 7. The sound of the revolt does not disturb our king.

Lesson 27

PRONOUNS, Continued

Demonstrative Pronouns

162. Demonstrative Pronouns point out an object as here or there, or as previously mentioned. They usually precede the noun they modify. They are, *hic, this; ille, iste, that; is, this or that; idem, the same.*

<i>hic, this</i>						
Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hūius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>

<i>Ille, that</i>						
Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ille</i>	<i>illa</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illae</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illius</i>	<i>illōrum</i>	<i>illārum</i>	<i>illōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illī</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>illum</i>	<i>illam</i>	<i>illud</i>	<i>illōs</i>	<i>illās</i>	<i>illa</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illā</i>	<i>illō</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>	<i>illīs</i>

Iste, that, that of yours, is declined like *ille*.

163.

VOCABULARY

agmen, inis, n., army (on the march).
causa, ae, f., cause, condition.
foedus, ēris, n., league, treaty, compact.
ignāvus, a, um, cowardly.
lux, lūcis, m., light.
opiniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation.
salūs, ūtis, f., safety.
tempestās, ātis, f., weather, storm.

EXERCISES

164. 1. Hōc agmen, hae causae, hūius opīniōnis. 2. Huic causae, in hac tempestate, hārum opīniōnum. 3. In istō exercitū, illōrum mīlitum, istius agminis. 4. Illa foedera, illa lux, istius salūtis. 5. Causa hūius exercitūs non est bona. 6. Caesar illōs mīlites ignāvōs ad se vocat. 7. Haec urbs est pulcherrima Italiae. 8. Isti ducēs opīniōnēs suās rēgi nostrō narrant. 9. Illa tempestas erat gravissima. 10. Salūs patriae vestrae isti imperātōri est cārissima. 11. Multa officia huic homini praestāmus. 12. Mīlites, ista officia exercitūs nōn amātis.

165. 1. That storm; these battles; of that opinion (of yours). 2. By those treaties; for this reason; in this light. 3. This soldier; of these men; for those horsemen. 4. Two cohorts of this legion were cowardly. 5. The robbers of that forest are very bad. 6. On those mountains are very tall trees. 7. With the swiftest soldiers he attacks those towers. 8. The rivers of that country are not very deep.

Lesson 28

PRONOUNS, Continued

166. Demonstrative Pronouns, continued.

Is, this or that; he, she, it.

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	is	ea	id	eī or iī	eae	ea
<i>Gen.</i>	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	eī	eī	eī	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs
<i>Acc.</i>	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
<i>Abl.</i>	eō	eā	eō	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs	eīs or iīs

Idem, the same

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	īdem	eadem	īdem	eidem iīdem īdem	caedem	eadem
<i>Gen.</i>	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
<i>Dat.</i>	eidem	eidem	eidem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem	eīsdem iīsdem īsdem
<i>Acc.</i>	eundem	eandem	īdem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
<i>Abl.</i>	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem

167.

VOCABULARY

acūmen, inis, n., *keenness*.
 arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult*.
 celeritas, ātis, f., *swiftness*.
 contrōversia, ae, f., *dispute*.
 facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply*.
 ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice*.
 labor, ōris, m., *labor*.
 locus, ī, m., *place, spot*.
 mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous*.
 oppidānus, ī, m., *inhabitant of a town, townsmen*.

EXERCISES

168. 1. Eius labōris, eidem oppidāni, eiusdem contrōversiae. 2. Idem acūmen, eadem celeritate, in eodem locō. 3. Earundem causarum, eisdem corōnis, eidem hominī. 4. Eius nūntiī celeritas est maxima. 5. Eius nōmen est Galba. 6. Oppidāni eius oppidi nōn sunt ignāvī. 7. Contrōversia gravis dē eis rēbus est inter eum et oppidānum. 8. Facultās magna frūmenti est in eodem oppidō. 9. Eōdem equitēs eōrum virtūte laudās. 10. Eōs ad sē vocat. 11. Eis dē ignāviā oppidānōrum narrās. 12. Dux suōs peditēs eōrum ignāviā vituperat.

169. 1. The same man; to the same women; of the same army. 2. Concerning the same causes; that camp; in this army. 3. Of these townsmen; the same places; for the same reason. 4. The people of this country avoid the dangers of war. 5. This general does not praise the cowardice of his soldiers. 6. The keenness of this boy's mind is wonderful. 7. The larger camp is in the same place. 8. You praise them; he blames her; they call him.

Lesson 29

PRONOUNS, Continued

The Intensive Pronoun

170. The Intensive Pronoun is **ipse**. It gives emphasis to the word with which it agrees, and its exact translations vary. Thus, **puer ipse**, *the boy himself*; **femina ipsa**, *the woman herself*; **donum ipsum**, *the gift itself*; **urbēs ipsae**, *the cities themselves*.

Ipsc, self.

Singular

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsi	ipsi	ipsi
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō

Plural

	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	ipsi	ipsae	ipsa
<i>Gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis
<i>Acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
<i>Abl.</i>	ipsis	ipsis	ipsis

RELATIVE AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

171. The Relative Pronoun is **quī**, *who*, *which*, and is declined as follows:

Singular

Plural

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

172. The Interrogative Pronouns are **quis**, *who*? **quid**, *what*? They are declined as follows:

Singular

	M. and F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quid
<i>Gen.</i>	cūius	cūius
<i>Dat.</i>	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quid
<i>Abl.</i>	quō	quō

The plural of the interrogative is the same as that of the relative.

The Interrogative Adjective **quī**, **quae**, **quod**, *what? what kind of?* is declined exactly as the Relative Pronoun.

RULE OF SYNTAX

173. A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; but its case is determined by its construction in the clause in which it stands.

pallium quō amictus est, the cloak with which he was covered.
oppida quae oppugnāmus, the towns which we attack.

174.

VOCABULARY

appellō, I name, call.
armō, I arm.
cāsus, us, m., chance, accident.
errō, I err, am mistaken.
festinō, I hasten, hurry.
firmitās, ātis, f., firmness, strength.
fugō, I put to flight.
hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters.
intereā, in the meanwhile.
prō, prep. with abl., before, for.

EXERCISES

175. 1. Ducis ipsius, hominēs ipsōs, ipsa regina. 2. Quid oppidum? Quis legatus? Quis puella? Quōrum hibernōrum? Cuius urbis? Cui militi? 4. Fēminae quās laudās. Agricola cuius puerum amās. 5. Ad urbem festinat quam Rōmam appellās. 6. Dux ipse de virtute militum qui pugnant narrat. 7. Hominēs qui sunt in oppidō armat. 8. Rēx milites laudās qui impetum hostium tardant. 9. Imperator deditiōne castrōrum omnēs culpat, quōs laudās. 10. Quis virtutem et firmitatem nō amat? 11. Civēs ipsi illōs latrōnes intereā fugant. 12. Castra nō sunt magna quae nostrī milites oppugnant. 13. Quis vestrum salutem populi nostrī implorat? 14. Duās cohortēs quās maxime amat in cornū dextrō collocat. 15. Princeps ipse est ignāvus et pericula belli vitat.

176. 1. The armies themselves; by accident itself; of the generals themselves. 2. What winter quarters? What man? What thing? 3. The island in which the flowers are. The building which is in the forest. 4. Soldiers who fight for the fatherland. In what place is the army? 5. In the meantime they fight the enemy's cavalry which is in the fields. 6. He calls the men who are in the town. 7. What enemy are they putting to flight?

Lesson 30

PRONOUNS, Continued

Indefinite Pronouns

177. The principal Indefinite Pronouns are **quis**, *anyone* (noun), and **quī**, *any* (adjective). These are declined respectively like the Interrogative and Relative Pronoun.

178. The compounds of the Indefinites **quis** and **quī** are as follows:

Substantives

M. and F.	N.
aliquis , <i>some one</i>	aliquid , <i>something</i>
quisquam , <i>anyone</i>	quidquam , <i>anything</i>
quisque	quidque , <i>each</i>
quidam , <i>quaedam</i> ,	quiddam , <i>a certain person or thing</i>

Adjectives

M.	F.	N.
aliquī	aliqua	aliquid , <i>some</i>
quisque	quaeque	quodque , <i>each</i>
quidam	quaedam	quoddam , <i>a certain</i>

In the compounded Indefinite Pronouns, only the pronominal part is declined, e. g., **alicūius**, **cūiusquam**, etc.

Aliquī has **aliqua** in the Nominative Singular Feminine, also in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter.

In the declension of **quidam**, **m** is changed to **n** before **d**; as **quendam**, **quandam**, **quōrundam**, **quārundam**.

179. VOCABULARY

interitus, **ūs**, m., *ruin, destruction.*
laudābilis, e, *praiseworthy, laudable.*
praeda, ae, f., *booty.*
pretiōsus, a, um, *valuable, precious.*
sī, *if.*
sperō, *I hope, hope for.*
superbus, a, um, *haughty, proud.*
vicissitūdo, **inis**, f., *change.*

EXERCISES

180. 1. Homini**bus** quib**usdam**, legātō alic**ui**. 2. Femina aliqua, in oppidō quō**d**am. 3. Cuique puerō, praedae alic**uius**. 4. Rēgum

quōrundam, rēginae cuiusdam. 5. Alicui, quidquam, cuiusque, quōrundam. 6. Cohortēs quaedam iam sunt in hibernis. 7. Ducēs aliqui sunt superbi. 8. Si quisquam victōriam sperat, errat. 9. Caesar legātōs cuiusque cohortis ad se vocat. 10. Quidam sunt superbissimi. 11. Illa ager est terra pretiosa. 12. Milites qui pericula belli nōn vitant sunt laudabiles. 13. Vicissitudines belli sunt multae et celerēs. 14. Aliqui interitum exercitus nostri sperant. 15. Aliqua in castris imperator nōn amat.

181. 1. Some men; anyone; each legion; a certain cohort. 2. To every general; in certain towns; in each camp. 3. Of every army; concerning some booty; because of some things. 4. The booty which is in the camp is valuable. 5. Some commanders praise certain legions. 6. The proud soldiers harass each town. 7. A certain leader of the Gauls checks the onset of the Romans. 8. The general blames some men who avoid the dangers of battle.

REVIEW

182. 1. Milites acerrimē et audācter pugnant. 2. Duodecim nūntii de perniciē bene narrant. 3. Ducenti equites septem vicōs vāstant. 4. Mille Rōmāni cum duobus milibus Gallōrum dimicant. 5. Ego te accūsō. 6. Dux suō gladiō pugnat. 7. In hōc proeliō milites nostri fortiter pugnant. 8. Eidem equites hunc laudant. 9. Dux eis, qui fortiter oppugnant, praedam dōnat. 10. Cohortēs quaedam pericula belli vitant.

Lesson 31

CONJUGATION

183. The inflection of the verb is called Conjugation. There are four conjugations, distinguished by the first vowel of the ending of the Present Infinitive Active. Thus.

Conjugation Infinitive Ending Distinguishing Vowel

I	-āre	ā
II	-ēre	ē
III	-ere	ē
IV	-ire	i

By the inflection of the verb is expressed Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, and Person.

184. There are two voices, Active and Passive. The Active Voice shows the subject as acting or being; thus, *amō, I love; sum, I am.*

The Passive Voice shows the subject as acted upon; thus **laudāmur**, *we are praised*.

185. There are three Moods—Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.

(a) The Indicative Mood states a fact, or inquires about a fact. Thus, **monēō**, *I advise*; **quid monēs**, *what do you advise?*

(b) For the force of the Subjunctive Mood, see p. 153.

(c) The Imperative Mood is used in commands, entreaties, etc.

186. There are six Tenses—Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect, which correspond respectively to the English Present, Past, Future, Present, Perfect, Past Perfect, Future Perfect.

The Subjunctive, however, lacks the Future and Future Perfect, and the Imperative uses only the Present and Future.

187. There are two numbers—Singular and Plural.

188. There are three persons—First, Second, and Third.

189. These make up the forms of the three moods, or the so-called Finite Verb. Besides these forms there are the Infinitives, the Supines, and the Gerund, which are verbal nouns, and the Participles (including the Gerundive), which are verbal adjectives.

190. Transitive and Intransitive Verbs. Verbs that take a direct object are Transitive Verbs; thus **eōs amāmus**, *we love them*. Other verbs are Intransitive; thus **manēmus**, *we remain*.

191. The Principal Parts of a verb are:

(1) The First Person Singular of the Present Indicative Active.

(2) The Present Infinitive Active.

(3) The First Person Singular of the Perfect Indicative Active.

(4) The Nominative Singular Masculine of the Perfect Passive Participle.

The Principal Parts of a verb are so called because from them the full conjugation of the verb may be derived.

CONJUGATION OF SUM

192. The conjugation of the irregular verb **sum** is given first because it enters into the conjugation of other verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.
sum

Pres. Inf.
esse

Perf. Ind.
fui

Fut. Partic.
futūrus

The Perfect Participle of **sum** is wanting.

Indicative**PRESENT TENSE****Singular**

*sum, I am,
es, thou art, you are,
est, he is;*

Plural

*sumus, we are,
estis, you are,
sunt, they are.*

IMPERFECT

*eram, I was,
erās, thou wast, you were,
erat, he was;*

*erāmus, we were,
erātis, you were,
erant, they were.*

FUTURE

*erō, I shall be,
eris, thou wilt be, you will be,
erit, he will be;*

*erimus, we shall be,
eritis, you will be,
erunt, they will be.*

PERFECT

*fuī, I have been, I was,
fuistī, thou hast been, thou wast, you
were,
fuit, he has been, he was;*

*fuimus, we have been, we were,
fuistis, you have been, you were,
fuērunt, } they have been, they were.
fuēre, }*

PLUPERFECT

*fueram, I had been,
fuerās, thou hadst been, you had been,
fuerat, he had been;*

*fuerāmus, we had been,
fuerātis, you had been,
fuerant, they had been.*

FUTURE PERFECT

*fuerō, I shall have been,
fueris, thou wilt (you will) have been,
fuerit, they will have been;*

*fuerimus, we shall have been,
fueritis, you will have been,
fuerint, they will have been.*

193.**VOCABULARY**

armenta, ōrum, n. pl., herds, cattle.

arō, I plough.

hasta, ae, f., spear.

hostia, ae, f., victim.

iustus, a, um, just, lawful, true.

lex, lēgis, f., law.

pāgus, ī, m., *district, village.*
perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual.*
piger, ra, rum, *unwilling, lazy.*
sacrificium, ī, n., *sacrifice.*
scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*
sub, under, *prep. with abl.*

EXERCISES

194. 1. Sunt, erātis, erō, fuit. 2. Es, erāmus, erunt, fui. 3. Estis, eram, erit, fuerātis. 4. Fuerant, fueritis, sumus, eris. 5. Fuerimus, fuerat, fuere, erō. 6. Armenta Helvetiōrum erant in agris. 7. Illi legatī imperātōris Rōmānī fuerunt fortissimī. 8. Quis fuit dux Sequanōrum? 9. Ubi eris? 10. In sacrificiō erunt hostiae multae. 11. Legēs Rōmānae semper fuerunt iustae. 12. Hasta hūius militis erat sub scūto. 13. Vos, agricolae, quī agrōs nōn arātis, estis pigri. 14. In pagis Helvetiōrum fuerant multi hostēs. 15. Ubi fuerātis? 16. Vōs omnes in oppidis Belgārum fuistis. 17. Sub arbore sunt flōres pulcherrimī.

195. 1. I am; he was; you have been; we had been. 2. You are; they will be; he has been; he will have been. 3. She had been; I shall be; we shall have been; thou art. 4. These soldiers have been very brave. 5. The leader has been cowardly. 6. Under the shield was the spear. 7. You, fellow citizens, will be just. 8. He had been in the great country of the Gauls. 9. The sick soldiers will be in the buildings.

Lesson 32

196. CONJUGATION OF SUM, Continued

Subjunctive

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
sim, may I be,¹	sīmus, let us be,
sīs, mayst thou be,	sītis, be ye, may you be,
sīt, let him be, may he be;	sint, let them be.

IMPERFECT

essem, I should be,¹	essēmus, we should be,
essēs, thou wouldst be,	essētis, you would be,
esset, he would be;	essent, they would be.

¹The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

PERFECT

fuerim, I may have been,¹
fueris, thou mayst have been,
fuerit, he may have been;

fuerimus, we may have been,
fueritis, you may have been,
fuerint, they may have been.

PLUPERFECT

fuissem, I should have been,
fuissees, thou wouldst have been,
fuisset, he would have been;

fuissemus, we should have been,
fuissetis, you would have been,
fuisissent, they would have been.

Imperative

Pres. es, be thou,
Fut. esto, thou shalt be,
esto, he shall be;

este, be ye.
estote, ye shall be,
sunt, they shall be.

Infinitive

Pres. esse, to be.
Perf. fuisse, to have been.
Fut. futurus esse,² to be about
to be.

Participle

Fut. futurus,³ about to be.

197.

VOCABULARY

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.

ante, before, in front of, prep. with acc.

brevis, e, short, brief.

captivus, a, um, captive; captivus (as noun), a captive.

contentus, a, um, contented.

firmus, a, um, steadfast, strong.

fossa, ae, f., ditch, trench.

fugitivus, a, um, fugitive; fugitivus (as a noun), a fugitive.

ibi, adv., there, in that place.

inopia, ae, f., lack, need.

nondum, not yet.

quondam, formerly.

¹ The many possible meanings of the Subjunctive will be taken up under Syntax. Only the most common meanings will be given in this paradigm.

² The form **fore** is often used for **futurus esse**.

³ **Futurus** is declined like **bonus**.

EXERCISES

198. 1. Sim, essem, fuerim, fuisset. 2. Sis, essetis, fueritis, fuissent. 3. Este, fuerimus, essent, sint. 4. Fuissēs, suntō, fuissēmus, fuerint. 5. Sitis, fuerit, fuisset, futurus. 6. Sim contentus. 7. Essēs firmus. 8. Fuissent captivi. 9. Fabula pueri erat longior. 10. Ante oppidum sunt agri feracissimi. 11. Nōs, qui libērī sumus, sīmus contenti. 12. Fuisset inopia magna rerum omnium. 13. Ille quondam erat amicus meus. 14. In illis fossis fuerint multi hominēs aegrī. 15. Plūrimae amicitiae sunt brevēs. 16. Laudāmus milites qui omnes fuerunt fortēs. 17. In hoc oppidō Belgārum Caesar nōndum fuerat.

199. 1. May I be; let us be; they would be; they may have been. 2. Thou wouldst have been; he may have been; he would be. 3. You would be; be thou; let her be; let him be. 4. Mayst thou be; we should be; we should have been; I should have been. 5. Let them be brave. 6. Soldiers, be steadfast, and there will be victory. 7. There may have been many men in the first trench. 8. The friendship between Gauls and Romans was brief.

Lesson 33

200.

FIRST (a-) CONJUGATION

amō, I love.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātus¹

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
<i>amō, I love,</i>	<i>amāmus, we love,</i>
<i>amās, you love,</i>	<i>amātis, you love,</i>
<i>amat, he loves;</i>	<i>amant, they love.</i>

¹ Many verbs in English taken from Latin are derived from the Perfect participial stem; e. g., *animate* from **animātus** (**animāre**), *effect* from **effectus** (**efficere**), *erect* from **ērectus** (**ērigere**), *select* from **selectus** (**sēligere**), etc.

IMPERFECT

*amābam, I was loving, I loved,
amābās, you were loving, etc.,
amābat, he was loving, etc.;*

*amābāmus, we were loving, etc.,
amābātis, you were loving, etc.,
amābant, they were loving, etc.*

FUTURE

*amābō, I shall love,
amābis, you will love,
amābit, he will love;*

*amābimus, we shall love,
amābitis, you will love,
amābunt, they will love.*

PERFECT

*amāvī, I have loved, I loved,
amāvistī, you have loved, you
loved,
amāvit, he has loved, he loved;*

*amāvimus, we have loved, we loved,
amāvistis, you have loved, you
loved,
amāverunt, -ēre, they have loved,
they loved.*

PLUPERFECT

*amāveram, I had loved,
amāverās, you had loved,
amāverat, he had loved;*

*amāverāmus, we had loved,
amāverātis, you had loved,
amāverant, they had loved.*

FUTURE PERFECT

*amāverō, I shall have loved,
amāveris, you will have loved,
amāverit, he will have loved;*

*amāverimus, we shall have loved,
amāveritis, you will have loved,
amāverint, they will have loved*

Notice that the Present, Imperfect, and Future are formed by adding the proper endings to the present stem, **am-**.

Similarly the Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect are formed by adding the proper endings to the perfect stem, **amav-**.

201.

VOCABULARY

aedificō, āre, āvi, ātus, build, erect.

āra, ae, f., altar.

consilium, ī, n., deliberation, plan.

invidia, ae, f., envy.

laborō, āre, āvi, ātus, work, suffer.

medius, a, um, middle, middle of.

migrō, āre, āvi, ātus, go, move, wander.

multitūdo, dinis, f., multitude.

mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, change, alter.
nunc, now, temporal adv.
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, pray, ask, request.
pedes, itis, m., foot-soldier, in pl., infantry.
planitiēs, ēī, f., plain.
putō, āre, āvī, ātus, believe, think, consider.
pugna, ae, f., fight, battle.
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse.
vir, virī, m., a man.

EXERCISES

202. 1. Aedificābimus, ōrātis, labōrābunt putāverunt. 2. Migrāvimus, mutāverant, recūsāverimus, putāvisti. 3. Laudāvit, superābo, collocāveras, dīmicābam. 4. Aedificāverō, collocāveris, occupābitis, superābant. 5. Populus huius oppidi aram aedificābat. 6. Aggerem ex duābus partibus oppugnābant. 7. Milites trium legiōnum oppida Helvetiōrum occupāverunt. 8. Multi hominēs in castris minōribus labōrābunt. 9. Pacem et amicitiam Gallōrum Caesar recūsabit. 10. Omnes vōs victōriam ōrābitis. 11. De omnibus rēbus nos iudicābimus. 12. Multitūdō virōrum et fēminārum a Gallia in Italiam migrāverat. 13. Peditēs in illō locō collocāvimus. 14. Timor magnus virōs qui erant in castris occupāvit. 15. Omnes equites qui in illa pugna dīmicāverunt laudābitis.

203. 1. You will work; I shall summon you; you will have suffered; we have moved. 2. We shall pray; he was considering; he has refused; I was praising him. 3. The soldiers have fought bravely in this battle. 4. The lieutenants had now gotten ready many beasts of burden. 5. Because of envy you have changed your plans. 6. We have stationed three cohorts in the same place. 7. Many foot-soldiers will be in the plain.

Lesson 34

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

204. Active Voice of **amō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

Singular	Plural
amem, <i>may I love,</i>	amēmus, <i>let us love,</i>
amēs, <i>love, may you love,</i>	amētis, <i>love, may you love,</i>
amet, <i>let him love, may he love;</i>	ament, <i>let them love, may they love.</i>

IMPERFECT

amārem, *I should love,*
 amārēs, *you would love,*
 amāret, *he would love;*

amārēmus, *we should love,*
 amārētis, *you would love,*
 amārent, *they would love.*

PERFECT

amāverim
 amāverīs
 amāverit

amāverimus
 amāveritis
 amāverint

PLUPERFECT

amāvīssēm, *I should have loved,*
 amāvīssēs, *you would have loved,*
 amāvīssēt, *he would have loved;*

amāvīssēmus, *we should have loved,*
 amāvīssētis, *you would have loved,*
 amāvīssent, *they would have loved.*

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive are formed from the Perfect Stem.

205.

VOCABULARY

Ariovistus, *i, m., Ariovistus, a king of the Germans.*

bellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make war, carry on war.*

classis, *is, f., fleet.*

cupidus, *a, um, fond, eager.*

ē, *ex, from, out of, prep. with abl., ex is to be used before vowels or h.*

gēns, gentis, *f., tribe.*

hōra, *ae, f., hour.*

intrā, *within, prep. with acc.*

ita, *thus, so.*

iugum, *i, n., yoke, ridge (of mountains).*

litus, *oris, n., shore.*

temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attempt, make trial of.*

turba, *ae, f., crowd, multitude.*

turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb.*

EXERCISES

206. 1. Putet, migrāret, orāvissem, laborārent. 2. Bellārēs, temp-
 tāremus, turbāvissent, recūsāretis. 3. Laudent, dimicāvissētis, parāvissēs,
 sperārem. 4. Bellēmus fortiter. 5. Victōriam semper sperārēs. 6. Sine
 periculō ex illō oppidō migrāvissent. 7. Populum illōrum oppidōrum
 turbābant. 8. Intrā ūnam hōram exercitum Gallōrum superāvisset. 9.

Cum duābus classibus litus occupāremus. 10. Hunc collem occupāre temptāmus.

207. 1. Let us praise the leader. 2. We should have prayed for peace. 3. They tried to storm the town with three cohorts. 4. Let them attempt the attack! 5. Within a few days they would have prepared a large army. 6. Let him himself who is so desirous occupy the shore! 7. Let Ariovistus himself implore aid!

Lesson 35

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

208. Active Voice of **amō**, continued.

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> amā, love thou;	amāte, love ye.
<i>Fut.</i> amātō, thou shalt love,	amātōte, ye shall love.
amātō, he shall love;	amantō, they shall love.

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i> amāre, to love.
<i>Perf.</i> amāvisse, to have loved.
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus esse, to be about to love.

Participle

<i>Pres.</i> amāns, ¹ loving. (Gen. amantis)
<i>Fut.</i> amātūrus, about to love.

Gerund

<i>Gen.</i> amandī, of loving.
<i>Dat.</i> amandō, for loving.
<i>Acc.</i> amandum, loving.
<i>Abl.</i> amandō, by loving.

Supine

<i>Acc.</i> amātum, to love.
<i>Abl.</i> amātū, to love, be loved.

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, Present Participle, and the Gerund are formed from the Present Stem.

The Perfect Infinitive is formed from the Perfect Stem.

The Future Participle, Future Infinitive, and the Supine are formed from the Participial Stem **amāt-**.

209.

VOCABULARY

arx, arcis, f., castle, citadel.
avis, is, f., bird.

¹ For the declension of **amans**, see **cliens**, Lesson 14.

dēsiderō, āre, āvī, ātus, long for, desire.

mors, mortis, f., death.

infestus, a, um, hostile, dangerous.

placō, āre, āvī, ātus, reconcile, pacify.

properō, āre, āvī, ātus, hasten, hurry.

unda, ae, f., wave.

vadum, ī, n., ford.

vindex, icis, m., avenger, defender.

EXERCISES

210. 1. Putā, dēsiderent, bellantō, parāvisse. 2. Properandō, laudandī, temptatūrus, dimicatūrus esse. 3. Turbāns, aedificantēs, mutātōte, pugnāvisse. 4. Vōs qui cupidī bellandī estis arma parāte! 5. Timōre mortis perīcula bellī vitāverunt. 6. Caesar vadum illius flūminis. temptatūrus est. 7. Legātus milītēs infestōs qui sunt in mediā plānitie placatūrus est. 8. Vōs, hominēs fortissimī, ad proelium properatūrī estis. 9. Mors ducis milītēs ad maximum impetum incitābat. 10. Victōriam spērantēs melius pugnāvissent.

211. 1. To have hastened; to be about to reconcile; about to contend. 2. By praising; for attempting; to embarrass. 3. May he long for his country. 4. Soldiers, fight bravely for the fatherland. 5. We are all about to attack the citadel. 6. All Romans are not fond of fighting. 7. Who would have implored aid of that man?

Lesson 36

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

212. Passive Voice of **amō**.

amor, I am loved.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

amor

Pres. Inf.

amāri

Perf. Ind.

amātus sum

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I am loved.

Singular

amor

amāris

amātur

Plural

amāmur

amāmini

amantur

IMPERFECT

I was loved.

amābar	amābāmur
amābāris, or -re	amābāminī
amābātur	amābantur

FUTURE

I shall be loved.

amābor	amābimur
amāberis, or -re	amābiminī
amābitur	amābuntur

PERFECT

I have been loved or I was loved.

amātus (-a, -um) sum	amātī (-ae, -a) sumus
amātus es	amātī estis
amātus est	amātī sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been loved.

amātus eram	amātī erāmus
amātus erās	amātī erātis
amātus erat	amātī erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been loved.

amātus erō	amātī erimus
amātus eris	amātī eritis
amātus erit	amātī erunt

213.

VOCABULARY

anteā, *previously, before.***gaudium**, *i, n., joy.***honōrō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, respect, honor.***initium**, *i, n., beginning.***mendācium**, *i, n., lie.***nēcō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, murder, kill.***ōtium**, *i, n., leisure, idleness.***portō**, *āre, āvī, ātus, carry, bring, convey.***postea**, *afterwards, later on.***sententia**, *ae, f., opinion.***tum**, *at that time, then.***vitium**, *i, n., fault, vice, mistake.*

EXERCISES

214. 1. Honōrātur, portantur, culpāris, laudāmur. 2. Excitabar, superābantur, convocābāmini, parātī sunt. 3. Vocātus erās, laudātī erimus, pericula vitātā erant. 4. Mendācia et vitia nōn laudantur. 5. Sententia ducis honōrātur. 6. Tum magnae classēs summā celēritate parābantur. 7. Duo legātī et multī milites necātī sunt. 8. Gaudium magnum erat in oppidō cūius exercitus fuit victor. 9. Omnia reliqua postea portabis. 10. Eum antea semper laudabas, et nunc nōn laudātur. 11. Tū cum omnibus fortibus laudabāris.

215. 1. They are honored; they have been killed; we are being carried. 2. It will be attacked; you will be praised; they have been made ready. 3. It will have been seized; we were overcome; you all have been summoned. 4. The town which you love is being attacked. 5. At the beginning of the attack many were not killed. 6. That hill together with the citadel will be occupied. 7. The opinion of the general had not been approved.

Lesson 37

FIRST (ā-) CONJUGATION, Continued

216. Passive Voice of *amō*, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be loved, let him be loved.

Singular	Plural
amē	amēmur
amēris, or -re	amēmini
amētur	amentur

IMPERFECT

I should be loved, he would be loved.

amārer	amārēmur
amārēris, or -re	amārēmini
amārētur	amārentur

PERFECT

amātus sim	amātī simus
amātus sis	amātī sitis
amātus sit	amātī sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been loved, he would have been loved.

amātus essem

amātī essēmus

amātus essēs

amātī essētis

amātus esset

amātī essent

Notice that the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Passive are formed with the Present Stem.

The Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive use the Participial Stem.

Imperative Mood

Pres. amāre, *be thou loved,*

amāminī, *be ye loved,*

Fut. amātor, *thou shalt be loved,*

amātor, *he shall be loved;*

amantor, *they shall be loved.*

Infinitive

Participle

Pres. amārī, *to be loved,*

Perf. amātus esse, *to have been loved,*

Perf. amātus, *loved, having been loved,*

Fut. amātum irī, *to be about to be loved;*

Gerundive amandus, *to be loved, deserving to be loved.*

Notice that the entire Imperative, the Present Infinitive, and the Gerundive belong to the Present Stem.

The remaining forms are made with the Participial Stem.

The Perfect Stem is not used in forming any tense of the Passive Voice.

RULE OF SYNTAX

217. The ablative with *ā* or *ab* is used with a passive verb to denote the one who does the act.

filia amātur ā mātře, the daughter is loved by the mother.

218.

VOCABULARY

castellum, i, n., *fort.*

concordia, ae, f., *harmony, agreement.*

convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together.*

culpa, ae, f., *guilt, fault.*

diligentia, ae, f., *diligence.*

discordia, ae, f., *disunion, discord.*

ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring up, educate.*

excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *stir up, rouse.*

existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, think, consider.

exitium, ī, n., destruction.

expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, take by storm.

ferrum, ī, n., iron, sword.

propter, prep. with acc., on account of.

statim, at once, immediately.

vix, scarcely, with difficulty.

EXERCISES

219. 1. Convocentur, laudēmur, honōrētur. 2. Excitātus esse, culpandus, parārī. 3. Existimārī, vocātus, superātus esset. 4. Amer, expugnārētur, excitārēis. 5. Cōpiaē parentur. 6. Tres cohortēs summā diligentīā parandae sunt. 7. Exitium hūius oppidī vitandum est. 8. Sine auxiliō nostrō castellum nōn expugnātum esset. 9. Hae legiōnēs ex hibernīs convocandae sunt. 10. Concordia in mīlitibus maxīmē est desideranda. 11. Propter discordiam ducum mīlītēs nōn convocātī essent. 12. Maxima copia frūmentī statim parētur. 13. Intrā ūnam hōram classes hostium superātae essent. 14. Caesar nōn dōnābit auxilium quod a Gallis implōrābātur.

220. 1. Let it be taken by storm; the soldiers should have been roused. 2. The citizens must be (=are to be) called together at once. 3. Children must be brought up in the best way. 4. The destruction of this army should have been avoided. 5. Without us that citadel would have been seized with difficulty. 6. Without his aid you would have been easily overcome.

Lesson 38

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION

221.

moneō, I advise

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.
moneō

Pres. Inf.
monēre

Perf. Ind.
monuī

Perf. Pass. Part.
monitus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I advise

Singular
moneō
monēs
monet

Plural
monēmus
monētis
monent

IMPERFECT

I was advising, or I advised

Singular
monēbam
monēbās
monēbat

Plural
monēbāmus
monēbātis
monēbant

FUTURE

I shall or will advise

monēbō	monēbimus
monēbis	monēbitis
monēbit	monēbunt

PERFECT

I have advised, or I advised

monuī	monuimus
monuistī	monuistis
monuit	monuerunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT

I had advised

monueram	monuerāmus
monuerās	monuerātis
monuerat	monuerant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or will have advised

monuero	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

222.

VOCABULARY

angustus, a, um, *narrow*.**dēbeō**, ēre, uī, itus, *owe*; with an infinitive, *ought*.**deus**, ī, m., *god*.**finis**, is, m., *end, boundary*; in pl. *territory*.**habeō**, ēre, uī, itus, *have, possess*.**maneō**, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain*.**militāris**, e, *military*.**moveō**, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move* (transitive).**prohibeō**, ēre, uī, itus, *keep off, keep away* (transitive).**signum**, ī, n., *sign, standard*.**superbia**, ae, f., *haughtiness, pride, insolence*.**sustineō**, ēre, sustinūī, ——— *withstand*.**timeō**, ēre, uī, ——— *fear*.**umbra**, ae, f., *shadow*.**videō**, ēre, vidī, visus, *see*.

EXERCISES

223. 1. Habemus, manēbat, sustinuimus. 2. Debētis, monebitis, mōvistī. 3. Prohibueram, timuerimus, viderant. 4. Gallis auxilium debemus. 5. Nōs eōsdem amīcōs habemus et habebimus. 6. Impetum hostium sustinere debent. 7. Magnum numerum equitum et peditum prohibuistis. 8. Castra ex eō locō iam mōverant. 9. Locum quam vidēs hostēs occupāverunt. 10. Illi ducēs maximam superbiam habent. 11. Hostēs nōn timēbitis. 12. Equitēs signa militāria iam vident. 13. In finēs Helvetiōrum nōndum castra movēbit.

224. 1. They will remain; he did not fear; he had seen you. 2. They have withstood the attack; he fears him; he had kept the enemy off.

3. A god does not fear men. 4. You ought to move the standard from that place. 5. The soldiers will remain on the hill which you see. 6. Who did not see the citadel which the enemy was holding?

Lesson 39

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

225. Active Voice of **moneō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I advise, let him advise

Singular	Plural
moneam	moneāmus
moneās	moneātis
moneat	moneant

IMPERFECT

I should advise, he would advise

monērem	monērēmus
monērēs	monērētis
monēret	monērent

PERFECT

I may have advised, or I have advised

monuerim	monuerimus
monueris	monueritis
monuerit	monuerint

PLUPERFECT

I should have advised, he would have advised

monuissē	monuissēmus
monuissēs	monuissētis
monuisset	monuissent

Imperative

Pres. monē, advise thou,

Fut. monētō, thou shalt advise,

monētō, he shall advise;

monēte, advise ye,

monētōte, ye shall advise,

monentō, they shall advise.

Infinitive

Pres. monēre, to advise,
Perf. monuisse, to have advised,
Fut. monitūrus esse, to be about to
 advise;

Participle

Pres. monēns, advising,
Fut. monitūrus, about to advise.

Gerund

Gen. monendī, of advising,
Dat. monendō, for advising,
Acc. monendum, advising,
Abl. monendō, by advising;

Supine

Acc. monitum, to advise,
Abl. monitū, to advise, be advised.

Note that the various moods and tenses of **moneō** are formed as in the First Conjugation. This is likewise true of the Third and Fourth Conjugations.

- 226.** aqua, ac, f., water.
 doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, teach, show.
 doleō, ēre, uī, itus, feel sorry, be pained, grieve.
 floreō, ēre, uī, ——— flourish, bloom, thrive.
 ludus, ī, m., play, game.
 morbus, ī, m., illness, sickness, disease.
 praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, grant, give, offer.
 prūdentia, ac, f., prudence.
 servō, āre, āvī, ātus, keep, save, preserve.
 stultitia, ac, f., folly.

EXERCISES

227. 1. Maneāmus, monērem, monuisset. 2. Videatis, timerētis, docuissent. 3. Vidēte, doluisse, praebitūrus esse. 4. Servandō, dolitūrus, praebitum. 5. Nōs omnēs liberōs doceāmus. 6. In eō oppidō pulcherrimō floruisse. 7. Milites, impetum hostium prohibete! 8. Ludōs in forō praebeant. 9. In castris nōn erat aqua. 10. Interitū exercitūs feminae et liberī doliissent. 11. Dei nostrī morbōs prohiberent.

228. 1. Let them teach; let the flowers flourish; advise. 2. I should have remained; you would have feared; by remaining. 3. We ought to offer games. 4. We should have kept off the attack of the enemy. 5. Let them move the camp from one place to another. 6. They should have had the same friends and enemies. 7. Who would fear soldiers who are sick with disease!

Lesson 40

SECOND (ē-) CONJUGATION, Continued

229. Passive Voice of **monēō**.**moneor**, *I am advised*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

moneor

Pres. Inf.

monēri

Perf. Ind.

monitus sum

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

*I am advised***moneor****monēris**, or **re****monētur****monēmur****monēmini****monentur**

IMPERFECT

*I was advised***monēbar****monēbāris**, or **re****monēbātur****monēbāmur****monēbāmini****monēbantur**

FUTURE

*I shall or will be advised***monēbor****monēberis**, or **re****monēbitur****monēbimur****monēbimini****monēbuntur**

PERFECT

*I have been advised, I was advised***monitus****monitus es****monitus est****monitī sumus****monitī estis****monitī sunt**

PLUPERFECT

*I had been advised***monitus eram****monitus erās****monitus erat****monitī erāmus****monitī erātis****monitī erant**

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or will have been advised

monitus erō
monitus eris
monitus erit

monitī erimus
monitī eritis
monitī erunt

230.

VOCABULARY

admodum, *quite, very much.***aequus**, a, um, *level.***apertus**, a, um, *open.***augeō**, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.***barbarus**, a, um, *barbarian*, as a noun, m., *a barbarian.***celeriter**, *quickly.***compleō**, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *fill up.***contineō**, ēre, uī, ——— *confine.***imber**, imbris, m., *rainstorm.***perterreō**, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify.***teneō**, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold.*

EXERCISES

231. 1. Augētur, continēbantur, perterrentur. 2. Perterriti, erant, complēbatur, praebitum est. 3. Docēbāris, prohibitus erās, sustinēberis. 4. Visae erant, perterriti erunt, visa est. 5. Barbari exercitū Caesaris perterriti sunt. 6. Morbi in castris maximē augēbantur. 7. Milites in castellis imbris continetur. 8. Loca aequa et aperta a Rōmānis tenebantur. 9. Incolae hūius oppidi multis proelitis perterriti erant. 10. Timōrēs servōrum augēbuntur. 11. Fossae in agrō statim complēbuntur. 12. In illā silvā perterrebāmini.

232. 1. We are seen; he was advised; they have been frightened. 2. You will be taught; we had been kept off; the camp was moved. 3. They will be shown; you were kept off; it had been sustained. 4. The trenches of the enemy have already been filled by our soldiers. 5. The onset of the barbarians will be checked. 6. The general's resources were increased. 7. In the forest of that island you will be greatly terrified.

REVIEW

233. 1. In illō oppidō septem legiōnēs erunt. 2. Vōs omnes in Italia fuistis. 3. Multī hominēs, qui erunt in castris minōribus, laborābunt. 4. Ex illō oppidō sine periculō migrāvissēmus. 5. Adventum tuum omnes expectābunt. 6. Tum magnae classēs summā celeritātē parābuntur.

7. Copiae summā diligentia parandae sunt. 8. Hostēs signa militaria nōn videbant. 9. In hōc oppidō, quod Rōmānt occupāverunt, maneamus. 10. Milites in castris imbris continēbantur.

Lesson 41

SECOND (-ē) CONJUGATION, Continued

234. Passive Voice of **moneō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be advised, let him be advised

Singular	Plural
monear	moneāmur
moneāris, or re	moneāmini
moneātur	moneantur

IMPERFECT

I should be advised, he would be advised

monērer	monērēmur
monērēris, or re	monērēmini
monērētur	monērentur

PERFECT

I may have been advised, or I have been advised

monitus sim	monitī sīmus
monitus sis	monitī sītis
monitus sit	monitī sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been advised, he would have been advised

monitus essem	monitī essēmus
monitus essēs	monitī essētis
monitus esset	monitī essent

Imperative

Pres. monēre, be thou advised,

monēmini, be ye advised,

Fut. monētor, thou shalt be advised,

monētor, he shall be advised;

monentor, they shall be advised.

Infinitive**Participle***Pres. monēri, to be advised,**Perf. monitus esse, to have been advised,**Perf. monitus, advised,**Fut. monitum iri, to be about to be advised;**Ger. monendus, to be advised, deserving to be advised.***235.****VOCABULARY***aestas, ātis, f., summer.**aestus, ūs, m., heat.**aetas, ātis, f., life, age.**deleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, destroy.**forma, ae, f., appearance.**fulgor, oris, m., brightness, lightning.**ira, ae, f., anger.**lateō, ēre, uī, ——— lurk, be hidden.**lūceō, ēre, lūxī, ——— shine.**nātūra, ae, f., nature.**suspicio, ōnis, f., suspicion.**videor, ēri, vīsus sum (passive of video), be seen, seem.***EXERCISES**

236. 1. Lateātur, monērēris, complētum esse. 2. Augērī, mōtus sit, delētum esset. 3. Prohibitum irī, timendus, continērentur. 4. Doctus essēs, delērētur, latuissēmus. 5. Illi latrōnēs latēre videntur. 6. Ducēs statim moneantur. 7. Suspiciōnēs imperatōris multis rēbus auctae essent. 8. Hōc oppidum a Rōmānis delētum esse vidētur. 9. Timōrēs nostri propter illud nōn augerentur. 10. In Italia aestus aestatis est maximus. 11. Lūna magnō fulgōre lūcet. 12. Propter haec ira ducis aucta esset. 13. Loca aperta a equitibus tenta essent.

237. 1. They seem to be hiding; let the place be filled up. 2. To have been destroyed; it would have been destroyed; to seem. 3. They would be terrified; we should be kept off. 4. The fears of the people would have been greatly increased. 5. The ditch seems to have been filled up by boys. 6. You would have been pained greatly by many things. 7. The attack of the barbarians should be withstood bravely.

Lesson 42

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION

238.

regō, I rule

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.
regōPres. Inf.
regerePerf. Ind.
rēxīPerf. Pass. Part.
rēctus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

*I rule*Singular
regō
regis
regitPlural
regimus
regitis
regunt

IMPERFECT

*I was ruling, or I ruled*Singular
regēbam
regēbās
regēbatPlural
regēbāmus
regēbātis
regēbant

FUTURE

*I shall or will rule***regam**
regēs
reget**regēmus**
regētis
regent

PERFECT

*I have ruled, or I ruled***rēxī**
rēxistī
rēxit**rēximus**
rēxistis
rēxerunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT

*I had ruled***rēxeram**
rēxerās
rēxerat**rēxerāmus**
rēxerātis
rēxerant

FUTURE PERFECT

*I shall or will have ruled***rēxerō**
rēxeris
rēxerit**rēxerimus**
rēxeritis
rēxerint

Subjunctive Mood

May I rule, let him rule

PRESENT

Singular
regam
regās
regatPlural
regāmus
regātis
regant

IMPERFECT

I should rule, he would rule

regerem	regerēmus
regerēs	regerētis
regeret	regerent

PERFECT

I may have ruled, or I have ruled

rēxerim	rēxerīmus
rēxeris	rēxeritis
rēxerit	rēxerint

PLUPERFECT

I should have ruled, he would have ruled

rēxissem	rēxissemus
rēxisse	rēxissetis
rēxisset	rēxissent

Imperative

<i>Pres. rege, rule thou;</i>	<i>regite, rule ye,</i>
<i>Fut. regitō, thou shalt rule,</i>	<i>regitōte, ye shall rule,</i>
<i>regito, he shall rule;</i>	<i>reguntō, they shall rule.</i>

Infinitive

<i>Pres. regere, to rule,</i>
<i>Perf. rēxisse, to have ruled,</i>
<i>Fut. rēctūrus esse, to be about to rule;</i>

Participle

<i>Pres. regēns, ruling,</i>
<i>Fut. rēctūrus, about to rule.</i>

Gerund

<i>Gen. regendī, of ruling,</i>
<i>Dat. regendō, for ruling,</i>
<i>Acc. regendum, ruling,</i>
<i>Abl. regendō, by ruling;</i>

Supine

<i>Acc. rēctum, to rule,</i>
<i>Abl. rēctū, to rule, be ruled.</i>

239.

VOCABULARY

auxilia, ōrum, n. pl. *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
 divitiae, ārum, f. plu. *riches, wealth.*
 fāma, ae, f., *report, reputation, fame.*
 grātia, ae, f., *grace, favor, thanks.*
 Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*
 in, into, prep. with acc.

instruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, draw up, arrange.

iter, itineris, n., journey, march.

litterae, ārum, f., a letter.

mitto, ere, misi, missus, send.

omnīnō, adv., altogether; in all.

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, put, place, establish.

praesidium, ī, n., garrison.

prōvincia, ae, f., province.

redūcō, ere, dūxī, dūctus, lead back.

relinquō, ere, liqui, lictus, leave behind.

EXERCISES

240. 1. Regēbant, instruēbat, mittunt. 2. Pōnent, redūximus, relinquiēns. 3. Posuimus, rēxerat, pōnant. 4. Misisset, posuissēs, relictūrus. 5. Redūcite, regendō, pōneret. 6. Litterās ad Caesarem miserunt. 7. Lēgātī, milites in prōvinciam redūcite. 8. Auxilia in Hispaniam Citeriōrem (*i. e.*, Spain north of the river Ebro) statim mittet. 9. Cōsulēs legiōnes in mediā plānitie instrūxerunt. 10. Erant omnīnō itinera duo inter montem et flūmen. 11. In eō locō auxilia relinquet. 12. In oppidō praesidium reliquisset. 13. Ad cōsulem auxilia redūxisēmus. 14. Lēgātōs ad senātum cum dīvitīs mittant. 15. Hoc itinere ad ripam flūminis milites reducat.

241. 1. He was ruling; he arranged the troops; he will send a messenger. 2. Let him place the standard; we will lead back the auxiliaries. 3. We left them in the town; he would have ruled. 4. Let us send our thanks to that country. 5. We should leave both cavalry and foot-soldiers in the province. 6. By ruling well a king holds the favor of the people. 7. Consuls, send your legions into Spain at once. 8. The leader seems to have drawn his troops up in the open plain.

Lesson 43

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

242. Passive Voice of **regō**.

regor, I am ruled

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.
regor

Pres. Inf.
regī

Perf. Ind.
rēctus sum

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I am ruled

Singular	Plural
regor	regimur
regeris, or re	regiminī
regitur -	reguntur

IMPERFECT

I was ruled

Singular	Plural
regēbar	regēbāmur
regēbāris, or re	regēbāmini
regēbātur	regēbantur

FUTURE

I shall or will be ruled

regar	regēmur
regēris, or re	regēmini
regētur	regentur

PERFECT

I have been ruled, or I was ruled

rēctus sum	rēcti sumus
rēctus es	rēcti estis
rēctus est	rēcti sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been ruled

rēctus eram	rēcti erāmus
rēctus erās	rēcti erātis
rēctus erat	rēcti erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or will have been ruled

rēctus erō	rēcti erimus
rēctus eris	rēcti eritis
rēctus erīi	rēcti erunt

243.

VOCABULARY

committō, ere, mīsi, missus, bring together; with proclium, join battle.

cōstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, decide, determine.

contendo, ere, tendī, tentum, hurry, hasten.

defendō, ere, fendī, fensus, defend.

gerō, ere, gessī, gestus, carry on, perform; with bellum, wage.

hic, here, at this place.

ignōminia, ae, f., disgrace, infamy.

parsimōnia, ae, f., economy.

poena, ae, f., punishment, penalty.

status, ae, f., statue.

superior, ius, higher.

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, hand over.

EXERCISES

244. 1. Relinquor, defendetur, reducebar. 2. Gestum est, traditum erat, positum erit. 3. Relinquēris, mittēbāmur, reducēmini. 4. Mittēmur, bellum geretur, reducti sunt. 5. Proelium statim committetur. 6. Interea duo oppida fortiter defendebantur. 7. Hic proelium gestum

est quō omnis terra superāta est. 8. Rōmānī castellum defendere cōstituerunt. 9. Statua parva virō tradita erat. 10. Poena erat maxima et iustissima. 11. In locīs superiōribus peditēs instruentur.

245. 1. Battle will be joined; he will hasten; hostages had been sent. 2. The citadel was defended; you will be led back; we will be left behind. 3. The sons of the leaders will be handed over as hostages. 4. They have decided to hasten to that town which is being bravely defended. 5. You with two cohorts will be left behind in the smaller camp. 6. Many wars have been waged bravely by the Roman people. 7. The generals had already decided to join battle. 8. The arms had been handed over by the enemy.

Lesson 44

THIRD (CONSONANT) CONJUGATION, Continued

246. Passive Voice of **regō**, continued.

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be ruled, let him be ruled

Singular	Plural
regar	regāmur
regāris, or re	regāmini
regātur	regantur

IMPERFECT

I should be ruled, he would be ruled

regerer	regerēmur
regerēris, or re	regerēmini
regerētur	regerentur

PERFECT

I may have been ruled, or I have been ruled

rēctus sim	rēcti simus
rēctus sis	rēcti sitis
rēctus sit	rēcti sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been ruled, he would have been ruled

rēctus essem	rēcti essemus
rēctus essēs	rēcti essētis
rēctus esset	rēcti essent

Imperative

<i>Pres. regere, be thou ruled,</i>	<i>regimini, be ye ruled,</i>
<i>Fut. regitor, thou shalt be ruled,</i>	
<i>regitor, he shall be ruled;</i>	<i>reguntor, they shall be ruled.</i>

Infinitive**Participle**

<i>Pres. regī, to be ruled,</i>	
<i>Perf. rēctus esse, to have been ruled,</i>	<i>Perf. rēctus, ruled,</i>
<i>Fut. rēctum irī, to be about to be ruled.</i>	<i>Ger. regendus, to be ruled, de-serving to be ruled.</i>

247.

VOCABULARY

cōgō, ere, cōēgi, cōāctus, force, compel.
contrā, against, prep. with acc.
dēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead away.
dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead.
expeditus, a, um, unencumbered, light-armed.
incendō, ere, cendī, census, set on fire.
instruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, fit out.
mūnitiō, ōnis, f., fortification.
pigritia, ae, f., sluggishness, laziness, idleness.
quā, where.
spectō, āre, āvī, ātus, behold, see.

EXERCISES

248. 1. Deducātur, ductī essent, incensum esse. 2. Bellum gere-rētur, proelium commissum esset. 3. Relinquerēmur, cōāctī essēmus, traditī essētis. 4. Regendus, ductum irī, relinquitur. 5. Nāvēs a Caesare melius instructae essent. 6. Aedificia statim incensa essent. 7. Milites expediti ad oppidum oppugnātum mittantur. 8. Omnia relinquere, quā erant, cōāctī essētis. 9. Caesar pigritiā militum impetum relinquere cōāctus est. 10. Trēs legiōnēs expeditae in Galliam contrā hostes ducantur. 11. In locis superiōribus proelium commissum esset.

249. 1. Let the battle be joined; light-armed soldiers should have been sent. 2. You would not have been given over as hostages; wars would not be waged. 3. You would be forced to draw up the battle line. 4. Let the buildings, where the soldiers are, not be set on fire. 5. A garrison would have been left in the fortification. 6. Because of the disgrace of the army we should have been forced to lead the army away. 7. Let ten ships be fitted out at once with all things.

Lesson 45

FOURTH (i-) CONJUGATION

250. **audiō, I hear.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
audiō	audire	audivi	auditus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I hear

Singular	Plural
audiō	audīmus
audīs	audītis
audit	audiunt

IMPERFECT

I was hearing, or I heard

Singular	Plural
audiēbam	audiēbāmus
audiēbās	audiēbātis
audiēbat	audiēbant

FUTURE

I shall or will hear

audiam	audiēmus
audiēs	audiētis
audiet	audient

PERFECT

I have heard, or I heard

audivi	audivimus
audivisti	audivistis
audivit	audivērunt, or ēre

PLUPERFECT

I had heard

audiveram	audiverāmus
audiverās	audiverātis
audiverat	audiverant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or will have heard

audiverō	audiverīmus
audiveris	audiverītis
audiverit	audiverint

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I hear, let him hear

Singular	Plural
audiam	audiāmus
audiās	audiātis
audiat	audiant

IMPERFECT

I should hear, he would hear

audirem	audirēmus
audirēs	audirētis
audiret	audirent

PERFECT

I may have heard, or I have heard

audīverim

audīverīmus

audīverīs

audīverītis

audīverit

audīverint

PLUPERFECT

I should have heard, he would have heard

audīvissem

audīvissemus

audīvisse

audīvissetis

audīvisset

audīvissent

Imperative

*Pres. audī, hear thou,**audīte, hear ye,**Fut. audītō, thou shalt hear,**audītōte, ye shall hear,**audītō, he shall hear;**audiuntō, they shall hear.*

Infinitive

Participle

*Pres. audīre, to hear,**Pres. audiēns, hearing.**Perf. audīvisse, to have heard,**Fut. audītūrus esse, to be about to hear;**Fut. audītūrus, about to hear.*

Gerund

Supine

*Gen. audiendī, of hearing,**Dat. audiendō, for hearing,**Acc. audiendum, hearing,**Abl. audiendō, by hearing;**Acc. auditum, to hear,**Abl. auditū, to hear, be heard.*

251.

VOCABULARY

conveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come together.**eōdem, adv., to the same place.****ferē, almost, about, practically.****impediō, ire, ivī (iī), itus, impede, hinder.****litterae, f. pl., literature.****luxūria, ae, f., extravagance, luxury.****mora, ae, f., delay.****mūniō, ire, ivī, itus, fortify.****musa, ae, f., muse (goddess).****occāsiō, ōnis, f., occasion, opportunity.****reperiō, ire, repperī, repertus, discover.****talis, e, such.****tristitia, ae, f., sadness, grief.**

undique, adv., *from all parts or sides.*

vallum, **i**, n., *rampart, intrenchment.*

veniō, **ire**, **vēnī**, **ventum**, *come.*

vestimentum, **i**, n., *garment.*

EXERCISES

252. 1. Veniat, repperimus, mūniverunt. 2. Venerat, convēnisse, mūniendō. 3. Impediētis, venīte, mūniverās. 3. Mūniebātis, audīvissemus, veniret. 5. Veniendī, impedivissent, veniamus. 6. Legiōnes moris maximīs nōndum convēnerunt. 7. Ferē omnēs principēs ad concilium venissent. 8. Illōs nūntiōs quī eōdem convēnerunt audiamus. 9. Galli occāsiōnem nōn facile repperissent. 10. Talis mora milites Rōmānōs nōn impedivisset. 11. Omnia castella omnibus rebus statim mūnite. 12. E luxuriā maximā semper tristitia venīt. 13. Castra vallō fossāque mūniant. 14. Vestimenta cōsulum Rōmānōrum sunt pulcherrima. 15. Reliquās legiōnēs quae imbris impediuntur expectemus.

253. 1. They have fortified; he would have hindered; he discovers. 2. We were assembling; you will hear; let her come. 3. We should have found; he would come; by impeding. 4. The enemy came from all sides to the same place. 5. The muse of literature does not like riches and extravagance. 6. You would have found an opportunity easily in that place. 7. The cavalry will hinder the march of the enemy's army. 8. Let us listen to the report of the battle which the messenger is announcing.

Lesson 46

FOURTH (ī-) CONJUGATION, Continued

254. Passive Voice of **audiō**.

audior, *I am heard.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.
audior

Pres. Inf.
audīrī

Perf. Ind.
auditus sum

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

I am heard

Singular
audior
audīris, or **re**
audītur

Plural
audīmur
audīmini
audiuntur

IMPERFECT

I was heard

Singular
audiēbar
audiēbāris, or **re**
audiēbātur

Plural
audiēbāmur
audiēbāmini
audiēbantur

FUTURE

I shall or will be heard

audiar	audiēmur
audiēris, or re	audiēmini
audiētur	audientur

PERFECT

I have been heard, or I was heard

auditus sum	auditi sumus
auditus es	auditi estis
auditus est	auditi sunt

PLUPERFECT

I had been heard

auditus eram	auditi erāmus
auditus erās	auditi erātis
auditus erat	auditi erant

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall or will have been heard

auditus ero	auditi erimus
auditus eris	auditi eritis
auditus erit	auditi erunt

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

May I be heard, let him be heard

Singular	Plural
audiar	audiāmur
audiāris, or re	audiāmini
audiātur	audiantur

IMPERFECT

I should be heard, he would be heard

audīrer	audirēmur
audirēris, or re	audirēmini
audirētur	audirentur

PERFECT

I may have been heard, or I have been heard

auditus sim	auditi simus
auditus sis	auditi sitis
auditus sit	auditi sint

PLUPERFECT

I should have been heard, he would have been heard

auditus essem	auditi essēmus
auditus essēs	auditi essētis
auditus esset	auditi essent

Imperative

<i>Pres. audire, be thou heard,</i>	<i>audimini, be ye heard,</i>
<i>Fut. auditor, thou shalt be heard,</i>	
<i>auditor, he shall be heard;</i>	<i>audiuntor, they shall be heard.</i>

Infinitive**Participle***Pres. audīri, to be heard,**Perf. auditus esse, to have been heard,**Fut. auditum iri, to be about to be heard;**Perf. auditus, heard,**Ger. audiendus, to be heard, deserving to be heard.***255.****VOCABULARY***angustiae, ārum, f. pl., a narrow pass.**augur, is, m. and f., augur, soothsayer.**circumveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, surround.**comēs, comitis, m. and f., companion, comrade.**extrā, prep. with acc., outside, beyond.**idōneus, a, um, suitable.**inveniō, ire, vēnī, ventus, find, come upon.**mox, soon.**nihil, indecl. n., nothing.**paene, almost, nearly.**praeco, ōnis, m., crier, herald.**prōcurrō, ere, cucurrī, cursum, run forward.**pulvis, pulveris, m., dust.**refugium, ī, n., refuge.**regiō, ōnis, f., region.***EXERCISES**

256. 1. Auditur, circumventum est, impedimur. 2. Inveniebatur, impeditus erat, inventus esse. 3. Urbs munita erat, mūsa circumventa est, auditum iri. 4. Reperiētur, circumventum esset, impediuntur. 5. Inveniretur, audiāmur, inventi essetis. 6. Locus idoneus mox inveniētur. 7. Comēs huius pueri quem vidēs repertus est. 8. Castra maiōra magnis operibus muniēbantur. 9. Hostēs angustis in montibus impediuntur. 10. Nihil de augure auditum erat. 11. Paene omnes legati qui erant extra castra prōcurrerunt. 12. Oppidum in colle alto muniendum est. 13. Castellum fossā et vallō muniatur. 14. Refugium statim inventum esset. 15. In illa insulā a barbaris circumveniretis.

257. 1. Let us run forward; let us not be hindered; they are being heard. 2. It was surrounded; you were found; they had been heard. 3. It would be fortified; they would have been impeded; she had been found. 4. To be heard; having been found; to be about to be surrounded. 5. We were hindered especially by the narrow passes. 6. The Roman

legion would have been surrounded in the forest. 7. The heralds ran forward in the dust. 8. A suitable place in that region ought to be fortified.

Lesson 47

VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

258. A few verbs of the Third Conjugation form the present indicative in **iō, ior**, like verbs of the Fourth Conjugation. They are inflected with the endings of the Fourth Conjugation, wherever those endings have two successive vowels. This occurs only in the Present System.

Capiō, I take

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.	Pres. Inf.	Perf. Ind.	Perf. Pass. Partic.
capiō	capere	cēpi	captus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular	Plural
capiō, capis, capit;	capimus, capitis, capiunt.

IMPERFECT

capiēbam, -iēbās, -iēbat;	capiēbāmus, -iēbātis, -iēbant.
----------------------------------	---------------------------------------

FUTURE

capiam, -iēs, -iet;	capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.
----------------------------	---------------------------------

PERFECT

cēpi, -istī, -it;	cēpimus, -istis, -ērunt, or ēre.
--------------------------	---

PLUPERFECT

cēperam, -erās, -erat;	cēperāmus, -erātis, -erant.
-------------------------------	------------------------------------

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō, -eris, -erit;	cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.
------------------------------	------------------------------------

Subjunctive Mood

PRESENT

capiam, -iās, -iat;	capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
----------------------------	---------------------------------

IMPERFECT

caperem, -erēs, -eret;

caperēmus, -erētis, -erent.

PERFECT

cēperim, -eris, -erit;

cēperimus, -eritis, -erint.

PLUPERFECT

cēpissēm, -issēs, -isset;

cēpissēmus, -issētis, -issent.

Imperative Mood

Singular

Pres. cape;*Fut.* capitō,

capitō;

Infinitive

Pres. capere*Perf.* cēpisse*Fut.* captūrus esse

Gerund

Gen. capiendī*Dat.* capiendō*Acc.* capiendum*Abl.* capiendō

Plural

*capite.**capitōte,**capiuntō.*

Participle

Pres. capiens*Fut.* captūrus

Supine

Acc. captum*Abl.* captū

259.

VOCABULARY

accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive.*capiō, ere, cēpī, captus, *take, adopt, capture.*carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, *pluck, pick.*certē, *surely.*constantia, ae, f., *firmness, fortitude.*contemnō, ere, contempsī, contemptum, *disregard, despise.*diripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder.*faciō, ere, fecī, factus, *make, do.*fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.*interficiō, ere, fecī, fectus, *kill.*iungō, ere, iunxī, iunctum, *join; foedus iungō, form an alliance;*amicitiā iungō, *make friendship.*libertās, tātis, f., *liberty.*maiorēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*mandātum, ī, m., *command, order.*

EXERCISES

260. 1. Accipit, capiebat, fecit. 2. Capiamus, fugeret, fugit. 3. Accipis; fugisti, capiendō. 4. Cēpissēs, fugerēmus, captūrus. 5. Multōs flōrēs in silvā carpsit. 6. Cum Gallis foedus iunxit. 7. Cum omnibus gentibus Galliae amicitiam nōn iungit. 8. Caesar in hostēs rursus subito impetum faciet. 9. Barbari undique agrōs dīripuerunt. 10. Captivi in castris fugissent. 11. Maiōrēs nostrī libertatem semper amabant et servābant. 12. Imperātor pācem contempsit et multōs interfecit. 13. Ad milites nostrōs fugiāmus. 14. Mandata huius hominis contemnere debemus. 15. Hostēs in silvam fugissent. 16. Ex hoc oppidō magnam cōpiam frūmentī dīripuimus.

261. 1. Let us take; he was fleeing; they have received. 2. Let him take; he is fleeing; you are being received. 3. Let them plunder; you would have fled; she would take. 4. Let us form an alliance with many peoples. 5. The enemy would surely plunder the larger camp. 6. The Roman army has taken many captives. 7. We have received the commands of the leader. 8. She would have done many better things.

Lesson 48

VERBS IN (-iō) OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION, Continued

262. Passive Voice of *capiō*.*capior, I am taken*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

Pres. Ind.

capior

Pres. Inf.

capi

Perf. Ind.

captus sum

Indicative Mood

PRESENT TENSE

Singular

capior, caperis, capitur;

Plural

capimur, capiminī, capiuntur.

IMPERFECT

capiēbar, -iēbāris, -iēbātur;**capiēbāmur, -iēbāminī, iēbantur.**

FUTURE

capiar, iēris, -iētur;**capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.**

PERFECT

captus sum, es, est;**captī, sumus, estis, sunt.**

PLUPERFECT

captus eram, erās, erat; capti erāmus, erātis, erant.

FUTURE PERFECT

captus erō, eris, erit; captā erimus, eritis, erunt.

Imperative Mood

PRESENT

Singular

capiar, -iāris, iātur;

Plural

capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.

IMPERFECT

caperer, erēris, -erētur;

caperēmur, -erēminī, -erentur.

PERFECT

captus sim, sis, sit;

capti simus, sitis, sint.

PLUPERFECT

captus essem, essēs, esset;

capti essēmus, essētis, essent.

Imperative Mood

Pres. capere;

capimini.

Ful. capitor,

capitor;

capiuntor.

Infinitive

Participle

Pres. capi.

Perf. captus esse.

Perf. captus.

Ful. captum īri.

Ger. capiendus.

263.

VOCABULARY

modestia, ae, f., *moderation, modesty.*

nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*

palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

rūrsus, *again.*

sapientia, ae, f., *wisdom.*

transfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia, a woman's name.*

EXERCISES

264. 1. Diripiuntur, caperis, acceptus est. 2. Interficiēbantur, accipiēbar, acciperis. 3. Capti essent, diripuisse, capiar. 4. Accepti erātis, interfecti essēmus, capiēmur. 5. In eō locō hostēs pontem fēcerant.

6. Milites subito interfecti essent. 7. Transfugae rursus capientur. 8. Ex illo oppido maximum numerum iumentorum diripiebatur. 9. Principes multarum nationum in paludibus capti sunt. 10. Libertas a maioribus nostris accepta est. 11. Omnes transfugae interfici debent. 12. Tullia, filia regis, capta erat. 13. In eo flumine pons subito factus esset. 14. Haec mandata et non illa a militibus accepta sunt. 15. Aliud consilium subito capiatur.

265. 1. You were plundered; they had been captured; she will be received. 2. Let them be taken; they are being plundered; you will be killed. 3. We will be received; he would have been killed; let me be captured. 4. The deserters should have been killed. 5. Many women and children of the enemy have been captured. 6. The lieutenant's camp would have been plundered by the enemy. 7. The envoys of many kings are being received by the general. 8. Your commands were not received by us.

Lesson 49

DEPONENT VERBS

266. Certain verbs, called Deponent, have, in the main, Passive forms with Active meaning.

In addition to the passive forms, they have the following Active forms: Future Infinitive, Present and Future Participle, Gerund and Supine.

The Gerundive always, the Perfect Passive Participle sometimes, have Passive meanings. Thus **sequendus**, *to be followed*; **adeptus**, *having been attained*.

These forms of deponent verbs are regular in their formation, and are classified in four conjugations, like regular verbs. The principal parts are:

	I. Conjugation	
hortor	hortārī	hortātus sum
	II. Conjugation	
vereor	verērī	veritus sum
	III. Conjugation	
sequor	sequī	secūtus sum
	IV. Conjugation	
potior	potīrī	potītus sum
	V. Conjugation (in -ior)	
patior	patī	passus sum

Indicative Mood

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	III. (in -ior)
<i>Pres.</i>	mīror	vereor	sequor	largior	patior
	mīrāris	verēris	sequeris	largīris	pateris
	mīrātur	verētur	sequitur	largitur	patitur
	mīrāmur	verēmur	sequimur	largimur	patimur
	mīrāminī	verēminī	sequiminī	largiminī	patiminī
	mīrantur	verēntur	sequuntur	largiuntur	patiuntur
<i>Impf.</i>	mīrābar	verēbar	sequēbar	largiēbar	patiēbar
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrābor	verēbor	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sum	veritus sum	secūtus sum	largītus sum	passus sum
<i>Plup.</i>	mīrātus eram	veritus eram	secūtus eram	largītus eram	passus eram
<i>F. P.</i>	mīrātus erō	veritus erō	secūtus erō	largītus erō	passus erō

Subjunctive

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrer	verear	sequar	largiar	patiar
<i>Imp.</i>	mīrārer	verērer	sequerer	largīrer	paterer
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus sim	veritus sum	secūtus sim	largītus sim	passus sim
<i>Plup.</i>	mīrātus essem	veritus essem	secūtus essem	largītus essem	passus essem

Imperative

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāre	verēre	sequere	largīre	patere
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātor	verētor	sequitor	largītor	patitor

Infinitive

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrārī	verērī	sequī	largīrī	patī
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus esse	veritus esse	secūtus esse	largītus esse	passus esse
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus esse	veritūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	largītūrus esse	passūrus esse

Participles

<i>Pres.</i>	mīrāns	verēns	sequēns	largiēns	patiēns
<i>Fut.</i>	mīrātūrus	veritūrus	secūtūrus	largītūrus	passūrus
<i>Perf.</i>	mīrātus	veritus	secūtus	largītus	passus
<i>Ger.</i>	mīrandus	verendus	sequendus	largiendus	patiendus

Gerund

mīrandī	verendī	sequendī	largiendī	patiendī
mīrandō, etc.	verendō, etc.	sequendō, etc.	largiendō, etc.	patiendō, etc.

Supine

mīrātum, -tū	veritum, -tū	secūtum, -tū	largītum, -tū	passum, -sū
--------------	--------------	--------------	---------------	-------------

267.

Vocabulary

adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, attack.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare.¹

colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, converse, confer.

cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, endeavor, attempt.

ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, march out.

excidium, ī, n., destruction.

iam, adv., now, already; non iam, no more, no longer.

insidiae, ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot.

moror, ārī, ātus sum, tarry, delay.

nēmō, m., no one, dat., neminī, acc. nēminem; gen. and abl. not used.

paulum, adv., a little.

proficiscor, ī, fectus sum, set out.

prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, advance, go forward.

resistō, ere, restitī, resist.

revertor, ī, reversus sum, return.

Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.

EXERCISES

268. 1. Adoriēmur, audēbit, adortus est. 2. Ausi sunt, morāmur, cōnābar. 3. Collocūtī erāmus, prōgressus es, colloquantur. 4. Morāta esset, ēgrederis, revertendō. 5. Profecti sumus, cōnēmur, revertāmur. 6. Nostrī paulum prōgressi revertēbantur. 7. Hostēs ex finibus suis rursus profecti sunt. 8. Multi captivi ē castris ēgredi cōnābantur. 9. Insidias inter montem et flūmen verebāmur. 10. Consules de salutē populi Rōmāni colloquebantur. 11. Nēmō hostium resistere audēbit. 12. Propter hās causās longius morāti essēmus. 13. In hoc oppidum celeriter revertēris. 14. Equitēs magnō impetū agmen hostium adorti sunt. 15. Legatī de excidiō urbis colloquantur.

269. 1. They were attacking; they dare; they had dared. 2. We were setting out; you will advance; he was trying. 3. We should have conferred; let us try; they marched out. 4. We shall try to attack the town. 5. No one dares to resist. 6. Having advanced a little, they greatly feared an ambush. 7. He speedily returned to the city.

¹ Some verbs, like **audeo**, have active forms in the Present System, but passive form elsewhere. These are called semi-deponent verbs.

Lesson 50

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS

270. There are two Periphrastic Conjugations, the Active and the Passive.

The Active is formed by combining the Future Active Participle with the forms of **sum**, and denotes an intended or future action.

Amātūrus sum, I am about to love

	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INFINITIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	amātūrūs sum	amātūrus sim	amātūrus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amātūrus eram	amātūrus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amātūrus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amātūrus fui	amātūrus fuerim	amātūrus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amātūrus fueram	amātūrus fuissem	
<i>F. P.</i>	amātūrus fuerō		

The Passive is formed by combining the Gerundive with the forms of **sum**, and denotes necessity or duty.

Amandus sum, I must be loved

<i>Pres.</i>	amandus sum	amandus sim	amandus esse
<i>Imp.</i>	amandus eram	amandus essem	
<i>Fut.</i>	amandus erō		
<i>Perf.</i>	amandus fui	amandus fuerim	amandus fuisse
<i>Plup.</i>	amandus fueram	amandus fuissem	
<i>F. P.</i>	amandus fuerō		

RULES OF SYNTAX

271. The agent in the passive periphrastic conjugation is expressed by the dative.

mihi rēs prōvidenda est, the affair must be arranged by me.

272. VOCABULARY

benignitās, ātis, f., kindness.
cautus, a, um, cautious, careful.
colloquium, i, n., conversation.
conservō, āre, āvi, ātus, preserve.
cruentus, a, um, bloody, stained with blood.
dēdō, ere, dēdidī, itus, give up, surrender.
liberō, āre, āvi, ātus, set free.
loquor, i, locūtus sum, speak.
post, after, prep. with acc.

recūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, refuse,
remigrō, āre, āvī, ātus, go back.
rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask.
tot, so many, indecl.

EXERCISES

273. 1. Cōservātūrī sumus, locūtūrus sum, recūsātūrus erat. 2. Liberātūrus eram, liberātūrī erant, liberandī sunt. 3. Sequendus est, tradītūrus fuisti, tradenda est. 4. Profectūrī fuērunt, dimicatūrī fuimus, egressūrī sunt. 5. Post hōc proelium milītēs illam urbem sunt adortūrī. 6. Peditēs ex castrīs subitō egressūrī sunt. 7. Benignitās ducis militibus est amanda. 8. Hae fēminae quae sunt captae liberandae sunt. 9. De excidiō illius oppidī locūtūrī erant. 10. Tot captīvī ex castris sunt egressūrī. 11. Inter omnēs nātiōnēs pax cōfirmanda est. 12. Istī milītēs in patriam remigrātūrī sunt. 13. Auxilium nōndum est rogandum. 14. Multī milītēs cruentī sē deditūrī fuērunt. 15. Haec aedificia nobis nōn diripienda sunt.

274. 1. We are about to give up; he was about to speak. 2. He must be set free; we shall be about to speak. 3. You are about to go back; peace must be preserved. 4. Aid must not be refused by us. 5. We were about to march forth suddenly from the camp. 6. The enemy was on the point of surrendering itself to the Roman consul. 7. You are not going to speak about so many disasters.

REVIEW

275. 1. Timōrēs nostrī propter illud nōn auctī essent. 2. Auxilia in prōvinciam statim mittant. 3. Gallī oppidum dēfendere cōstituērunt. 4. Intereā castra fortiter dēfendantur. 5. Navēs statim instruerentur. 6. Hōs nūntiōs qui eōdem convēnerunt audirēmus. 7. Angustiis in montibus impediēbāmur. 8. Ex hōc oppidō magnam cōpiam frūmenti diripuērunt. 9. Equitēs nostrī illud oppidum expugnāvisse videbantur. 10. Principēs multārum nātiōnum in palūdibus erant captī.

Lesson 51

IRREGULAR VERBS

276. A number of verbs which have special irregularities are called Irregular. The most important of these are **sum, dō, ferō, volō, nōlō, mālō, eō, fiō.**

277. The conjugation of **sum** has been given. Its various compounds are conjugated in the same way. Examples are,

Absum, abesse āfui āfutūrus, am absent.

Pres. Partic. **absēns (-tis), absent.**

adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus, am present.

praesum, praesse, praefui, praefutūrus, am in charge of.

Pres. partic. **praesens (-tis), present.**

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, prōfūtūrus, be of benefit.

(The preposition appears as **prod-** before a vowel).

278. Conjugation of **possum, be able.**

In its present system **possum** is a compound of **potis (pote), able,** and **sum.** The perfect system and the participle **potēns** (used as an adjective) are from an obsolete verb **poteō.**

PRINCIPAL PARTS

possum, posse, potui, can, be able

Indicative Mood

	Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	possum, potes, potest;	possumus, potestis, possunt.
<i>Imp.</i>	poteram, etc.	poterāmus, etc.
<i>Fut.</i>	poterō, etc.	poterimus, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	potui, etc.	potuimus, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	potueram, etc.	potuerāmus, etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	potuerō, etc.	potuerimus, etc.

Subjunctive Mood

	Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	possim, possis, possit;	possimus, possitis, possint.
<i>Imp.</i>	possem, etc.	possēmus, etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	potuerim, etc.	potuerimus, etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	potuissem, etc.	potuissēmus, etc.

Infinitive

Pres. **posse.** *Perf.* **potuisse.**

Participle

Pres. **potēns** (as an adjective),
powerful.

279.

VOCABULARY

dēsum, dēesse, dēfui, dēfutūrus, be wanting, fail.

excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, depart from.

fortūna, ae, f., fortune.

incommodum, *i*, *n.*, *disaster*.

iterum, *again*, *a second time*.

longē, *adv.*, *far*.

potestās, *ātis*, *f.*, *power*, *opportunity*.

vulnus, *eris*, *n.*, *wound*.

EXERCISES

280. 1. *Poteram, potuerāmus, potuisti.* 2. *Potuisse, adfuērunt, afutūrus.* 3. *Potueris, poterunt absēns.* 4. *Potui, potuerint, adesse.* 5. *Fortūna Rōmānis deerat.* 6. *Potestās pugnandī iterum defuit.* 7. *Hominēs qui adsunt ex castris excessūri sunt.* 8. *Ducēs nostrī dē incommodis colloqui nōn poterant.* 9. *Militēs qui vulnera accēperunt aberunt.*

281. 1. They were absent; he could; we can. 2. They would have been able; you had been able; to have been able. 3. They had been present; you are in charge; we should have been absent. 4. Let us be present; I had been in charge; we are present. 5. The horsemen were unable to depart from that place. 6. The opportunity of fleeing was not present. 7. We should have been able to set out.

Lesson 52

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

282. Conjugation of **dō**, *I give*.

This verb is conjugated like any verb of the first conjugation except that the **a** is usually short. **A** is long only in the second person singular of the present indicative and present imperative and in the nominative singular of the present participle.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

dō,

dāre,

dedī,

dātus

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

Pres. **dō, dās, dat;**

Imp. **dābam**, etc.;

Fut. **dābō**, etc.;

Perf. **dedī**, etc.;

Plup. **dederam**, etc.;

Fut. Perf. **dederō**, etc.;

dāmus, datis, dant.

dābāmus, etc.

dābimus, etc.

dedimus, etc.

dederāmus, etc.

dederimus, etc.

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	dem , etc.;	dēmus , etc.
<i>Imp.</i>	dārem , etc.;	dārēmus , etc.
<i>Perf.</i>	dederim , etc.;	dederimus , etc.
<i>Plup.</i>	dedissem , etc.	dedissēmus , etc.

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i>	dā ;	dāte .
<i>Fut.</i>	dātō ;	dātōte .
	dātō ;	dantō .

Infinitive

Participle

<i>Pres.</i>	dāre	dāns .
<i>Perf.</i>	dedisse	
<i>Fut.</i>	dātūrus esse .	dātūrus .

Gerund

Supine

dandī, etc.

dātum, dātū.

The passive is inflected consistently with the short vowel; as **dārī**, **dātur**, **dābatur**, etc.

283.

VOCABULARY

averto, ere, **tī**, versus, *avert*, turn away.
iūsiūrandum; gen. **iūris iūrandī**, n., *oath*.

(Each word is declined separately)

lēnis, e, *soft, mild, gentle*.
negōtium, ī (**iī**), n., *business*.
pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
pūblicus, a, um, *public*.
respōnsum, ī, n., *answer*.
stultus, a, um, *foolish, silly*.
urbānus, a, um, *of a city, refined*.
venia, ae, f., *permission, forgiveness*.

EXERCISES

284. 1. **Dedī**, **dederō**, **dedissem**. 2. **Dabat**, **dabit**, **daret**. 3. **Dās**, **dedisse**, **dederis**. 4. **Datum erat**, **dabimus**, **dēmus**. 5. **Pecūnia pūblica cōsulibus data erat**. 6. **Hostēs nobīs respōnsum stultum dederunt**. 7. **Tibi venia data est**. 8. **Barbarī multōs obsides dedissent**. 9. **Inter omnes qui aderant iūs iūrandum datum est**. 10. **Respōnsum lēne iram avertit**.

285. 1. We had given; you will give; he gave. 2. Having been given; to have given; I should have given. 3. He will have given; let us give; you will give. 4. It would have been given; let them give; it was given. 5. Public money was given them. 6. Many hostages should have been given them. 7. No answer at all will be given you.

Lesson 53

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

286. Conjugation of *ferō*, *I bear*.

This verb has two distinct stems—the present stem *fer*—and the root *tol*—which appears in the perfect system as *tul*—and in the participial system as *lāt*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

ferō	ferre	tuli	lātus
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

ACTIVE VOICE

Indicative Mood

Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i> ferō, fers, fert;	ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
<i>Imp.</i> ferebam;	ferēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> feram;	ferēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> tulī;	tulimus.
<i>Plup.</i> tuleram;	tulerāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> tulerō;	tulerimus.

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i> feram;	ferāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> ferrem;	ferrēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> tulerim;	tulerīmus.
<i>Plup.</i> tulissem;	tulissēmus.

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> fer;	ferte.
<i>Fut.</i> fertō,	fertōte,
fertō;	feruntō.

Infinitive

Pres. **ferre.**
Perf. **tulisse.**
Fut. **lātūrus esse.**

Participle

Pres. **ferēns.**
Fut. **lātūrus.**

	Gerund	Supine
<i>Gen.</i>	ferendī,	
<i>Dat.</i>	ferendō,	
<i>Acc.</i>	ferendum,	<i>Acc.</i> lātum,
<i>Abl.</i>	ferendō.	<i>Abl.</i> lātū.

PASSIVE VOICE

PRINCIPAL PARTS

	feror	ferri	lātus sum
	Indicative Mood		
	Singular		Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	feror, ferris, fertur;		ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferēbar;		ferēbāmur.
<i>Fut.</i>	ferar;		ferēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sum;		lātī sumus.
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus eram;		lātī erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i>	lātus erō;		lātī erimus.
	Subjunctive Mood		
<i>Pres.</i>	ferar;		ferāmur.
<i>Imp.</i>	ferrer;		ferrēmur.
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus sim;		lātī sīmus.
<i>Plup.</i>	lātus essem;		latī essēmus.
	Imperative Mood		
<i>Pres.</i>	fere;		ferimini.
<i>Fut.</i>	fertor;		_____
	fertor;		feruntor.
	Infinitive		Participle
<i>Pres.</i>	ferri.		<i>Perf.</i> lātus.
<i>Perf.</i>	lātus esse.		<i>Ger.</i> ferendus.
<i>Fut.</i>	lātum, iri.		

Note the following Compounds—

afferō	afferre	attuli	allātus	bring
auferō	auferre	abstuli	ablātus	take away
cōnferō	cōnferre	contuli	collātus	collect
inferō	inferre	intuli	illātus	bring against
referō	referre	rettuli	relātus	bring back
sufferō	sufferre	sustuli	sublātum	endure.

287.

VOCABULARY

adhūc, *up to this time, hitherto.*

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring.*

arceō, ēre, uī, . . . *keep from, hinder.*

coerceō, ēre, uī, itus, *restrain, check.*

condiciō, ōnis, f., *condition, terms.*

cōnferō, ferre, tuli, collātus, *bring together; se cōferre*, *betake one's self.*

impedimentum, ī, n., *hindrance; plural, baggage.*

numquam, *never.*

ne . . . quidem, *not even; emphasizes the expression placed between the ne and the quidem.*

perferō, ferre, tuli, lātus, *carry through, convey, endure.*

protinus, *forthwith, straightway.*

referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus, *bring back.*

subsidium, ī, n., *assistance.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*

EXERCISES

288. 1. Relāti sunt, tulisse, referēns. 2. Afferet, perfertur, refert. 3. Lāti essent, afferētur, affertur. 4. Contulisse, lātus esse, lāturus. 5. Referendī, attulimus, ferendus. 6. Equitēs nobīs subsidium ferēbant. 7. Rōmānī sē subito in castra contulērunt. 8. Multi mūnti fāmam dē tumultibus ad nōs pertulērunt. 9. Calamitātem ferre bene nōn potest. 10. Milītēs impedimenta in ūnum lacum celeriter conferent. 11. Sine spē magnā talēs labōrēs numquam pertulisset. 12. Magna cōpia frūmenti ab sociis afferēbātur. 13. Nāvēs impedimenta et frūmentum rettulērunt. 14. Nē hic quidem nūntius fāmam dē calamitate attulit. 15. Potestās fāmam referendī nēminī data est.

289. 1. To have borne; I bring together; you are bringing. 2. They brought back; he would have borne; you will bear. 3. By bearing; let them endure; he will bring. 4. We have borne; you would have borne; you would be bringing together. 5. The messengers brought back many reports about the calamity. 6. The grain should have been brought to us at once. 7. We can in no way endure disgrace. 8. The standards have been brought back with glory.

Lesson 54

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

290. Conjugation of **volō**, *I wish*, and its compounds.

Nōlō, *I am unwilling*, is a compound of **nē** and **volō**. **Mālō**, *I prefer*, is made up of **magis** and **volō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

volō,
nōlō,
mālō

velle
nōlle,
mälle,

voluī.
nōluī.
māluī.

Indicative Mood

Pres. **volō,**
vīs,
vult;
volumus,
vultis,
volunt.

nōlō,
nōn vīs,
nōn vult;
nolumus,
nōn vultis,
nolunt.

mālō,
māvīs,
māvult;
mālumus,
māvultis,
mālunt.

Imp. **volēbam.**

nōlēbam.

nālēbam.

Fut. **volam.**

nōlam.

mālam.

Perf. **voluī.**

nōluī.

māluī.

Plup. **volueram.**

nōlueram.

mālueram.

F. P. **voluerō.**

nōluerō.

māluerō.

Subjunctive Mood

Pres. **velim.**

nōlim.

mālim.

Imp. **vellem.**

nōllem.

māllem.

Perf. **voluerim.**

nōluerim.

māluerim.

Plup. **voluissem.**

nōluissem.

māluissem.

Imperative Mood

Pres. **nōlī,** **nōlite,**

Fut. **nōlītō,** **nōlītōte,**

nōlītō, **nōluntō.**

Infinitive

Pres. **velle.**

nōlle.

mälle.

Perf. **voluisse.**

nōluisse.

māluisse.

Participle

Pres. **volēns.**

nōlēns.

291.

VOCABULARY

accendō, ere, accendī, accensum, enkindle, rouse.

aspectus, ūs, m., sight, look, appearance.

dēserō, ere, serui, sertus, abandon, desert, neglect.

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessurus, depart.

hūc, adv., hither.

maritimus, a, um, of the sea, maritime.

moriōr, irī, moritūrus, die.

ōra, ae, f., coast.

quārē, adv., wherefore, why?

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, write; of laws, draw up.

ūsus militāris, military experience.

EXERCISES

292. 1. Volumus, volumus, mālumus. 2. Nōn vultis, vultis, māvultis. 3. Vis, nōluerātis, māluerit. 4. Vellēs, nōluissētis, mālīt. 5. Volebās, mālles, māluit. 6. Iram militum accendere nōluit. 7. Cōsul morīrī māvult. 8. Quārē hūc ventre voluisti? 9. Ab ōrā maritimā discēdere nōluissēm. 10. Militēs fortēs urbem dēserere nōlent. 11. In hāc urbe manere māluissemus. 12. Nūntius ducem videre vult. 13. Quārē de ūsū militāre tuō scribere nōn vis?

293. 1. They wished; he is unwilling; they will prefer. 2. We should have wished; to have preferred; I had been unwilling. 3. You wish; he will wish; he would have preferred. 4. Brave soldiers are always unwilling to withdraw. 5. Why did he prefer to proceed hither? 6. The leader will be unwilling to desert the place. 7. He does not wish to rouse the anger of the allies. 8. He will not wish to speak about his military experience.

Lesson 55

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

294. Conjugation of **fiō** (passive of **faciō**), *be made, be done, occur, or become.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS

fiō,

fieri,

factus sum.

Indicative Mood

Singular	Plural
<i>Pres.</i> fiō, fis, fit;	fiſmus, fitis, fiunt.
<i>Imp.</i> fiēbam;	fiēbāmus.
<i>Fut.</i> fiam;	fiēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> factus sum;	facti sumus.
<i>Plup.</i> factus eram;	facti erāmus.
<i>F. P.</i> factus erō;	facti erimus.

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i> fiam;	fiāmus.
<i>Imp.</i> fierem;	fierēmus.
<i>Perf.</i> factus sim;	facti simus.
<i>Plup.</i> factus essem;	facti essemus.

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> fi;	fiſte.
Infinitive	Participle
<i>Pres.</i> fieri.	
<i>Perf.</i> factus esse.	<i>Perf.</i> factus.
<i>Fut.</i> factum iri.	<i>Ger.</i> faciendus.

295.**VOCABULARY**

- aptus, a, um, suitable, fit.**
certus, a, um, sure. N. B. phrase **certior fieri**, lit. *to be made more certain*, i. e., *to be informed*.
claudō, ere, clausi, clausum, shut up, close, surround.
concurſus, ūs, m., a running together.
crēber, bra, brum, frequent.
dividō, ere, viſi, viſus, divide, separate.
hodiē, today.
libenter, willingly, with pleasure.
ob, on account of, prep. with acc.
per, through, by means of, prep. with acc.
perfuga, ae, m., deserter.
repentinus, a, um, sudden.
vincō, ere, vici, victum, conquer.

EXERCISES

- 296.** 1. Factum erat, fis, fiam. 2. Fiēmus, facti estis, factus erō.
 3. Fiēbātis, fiāmus, facti essemus. 4. Fi, factum iri, factus esse. 5.
 Fierēmus, facti erant, fiunt. 6. Ob multas causas crebra proelia fiebant.

7. Caesar de hoc Gallorum tumultu certior factus est. 8. Praedam libenter diviserunt. 9. Repentini et magni concursus pro castris fiebant. 10. De fuga repentina Gallorum per fugas nos certiores facti sumus.

297. 1. We became; you are becoming; it will occur. 2. It would have happened; we should have become; let us become. 3. The consuls have been informed concerning the uprising. 4. Those barbarians will be made free today. 5. Sudden disasters occur frequently. 6. Because of many reasons he had not become the leader of the army. 7. Let us willingly become suitable soldiers.

Lesson 56.

IRREGULAR VERBS, Continued

298. Conjugation of *eo*, *I go*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS

eo, *ire*, *ii*(*ivi*), *itum*

Indicative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <i>eo</i> , <i>is</i> , <i>it</i> ;	<i>imus</i> , <i>itis</i> , <i>eunt</i> .
<i>Imp.</i> <i>ibam</i> ;	<i>ibamus</i> .
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ibo</i> ;	<i>ibimus</i> .
<i>Perf.</i> <i>ivi</i> ;	<i>ivimus</i> .
<i>Plup.</i> <i>iveram</i> ;	<i>iveramus</i> .
<i>F. P.</i> <i>ivero</i> ;	<i>iverimus</i> .

Subjunctive Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <i>eam</i> ;	<i>eamus</i> .
<i>Imp.</i> <i>irem</i> ;	<i>iremus</i> .
<i>Perf.</i> <i>iverim</i> ;	<i>iverimus</i> .
<i>Plup.</i> <i>ivissem</i> ;	<i>ivissemus</i> .

Imperative Mood

<i>Pres.</i> <i>i</i> ;	<i>ite</i> .
<i>Fut.</i> <i>ito</i> ,	<i>itote</i> ,
<i>ito</i> ;	<i>eunto</i> .

Infinitive

Pres. *ire*.
Perf. *ivisse*.
Fut. *iturus esse*.

Participle

Pres. *iens*, *Gen.* *euntis*.
Fut. *iturus*.

Gerund**Supine***Gen.* **eundī,***Dat.* **eundō,***Acc.* **eundum,***Abl.* **eundō.***Acc.* **itum,***Abl.* **itū.****299.****INTERROGATIVE SENTENCES**

1. Interrogative Sentences are of various sorts. They may contain no interrogative word.

vīs pugnāre? *do you want to fight?*

2. They may be introduced by an interrogative word, usually one of the following:

(a) by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb.

quid agis? *What are you doing?*

cūr loquimur? *Why do we speak?*

(b) by the enclitic **-ne** attached to the emphatic word, usually the first in the sentence.

vidēsne me? *Do you see me?*

(c) by **nōnne** expecting the answer *yes*.

nōnne meministi? *Don't you remember?*

(d) by **num**, expecting the answer *no*.

num infitīari potes? *You can't deny it, can you?*

300.**VOCABULARY**

adeō, ire īi, itus, *go to, visit.*

circiter, *adv., about.*

circumeō, ire, īi, itus, *go around, surround.*

clam, *secretly.*

cur, *why.*

ineō, ire, īi, itus, *enter upon; consilium ire,* *form a plan.*

intercō, ire, īi, itūrus, *perish.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.

nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer *yes*.

num, interrogative particle expecting the answer *no*; in indirect questions, *whether*.

redeō, ire, īi, itūrus, *return.*

trāns, *across, prep. with acc.*

transeō, ire, īi, itus, *cross.*

EXERCISES

301. 1. Īmus, adiisse, ierat. 2. Adiisse, adeāmus, rediimus. 3. Interitūrus, interiit, interierant. 4. Redibitis, redibas, itūrus esse. 5. In urbem redire vis? 6. Cūr flūmen trānsitūrī sumus? 7. Nōnne hostēs transeundi initium fecerunt? 8. Num illi consilia dē bellō clam infre cōnantur? 9. Trāseuntne barbarī hōc flūmen? 10. Omnēs ex prōvinciā in urbem redierant.

302. 1. We are going; you will return; let us cross. 2. You would have perished; they had visited; he has formed a plan. 3. They will go around; we shall cross; let them visit. 4. They haven't surrounded the camp, have they? 5. You will cross the river quickly, won't you? 6. Why did so many nations form plans for war? 7. All would surely have perished.

Lesson 57

DEFECTIVE VERBS

303. Defective Verbs lack certain forms. Some of the most important are as follows:

Conjugation of *aiō*, *I say*

	Indicative		Subjunctive	
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>aiō</i>	_____	_____	_____
	<i>ais</i>	_____	<i>aiās</i>	_____
	<i>ait</i>	<i>aiunt</i>	<i>aiat</i>	_____
<i>Imp.</i>	<i>aiēbam</i>	<i>aiēbāmus</i>		
	<i>aiēbās</i>	<i>aiēbātis</i>		
	<i>aiēbat</i>	<i>aiēbant</i>		
	Imperative		Participle	
	<i>aī</i>		<i>aiēns</i>	

Conjugation of *inquam*, *I say*

	Indicative			
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>inquam</i>	<i>inquimus</i>	<i>Fut.</i>	_____
	<i>inquis</i>	<i>inquitis</i>		<i>inquiēs</i> _____
	<i>inquit</i>	<i>inquiunt</i>		<i>inquiet</i> _____
<i>Imp.</i>	_____	_____	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>inquiī</i> _____
	_____	_____		<i>inquiīstī</i> _____
	<i>inquiēbat</i>	_____		_____

Imperative**inque****inquitō**

The following verbs are used chiefly in the perfect system.

coepī, *I have begun, I began.* **meminī**, *I remember.* **odī**, *I hate.*

Indicative*Perf.* **coepī****meminī****odī***Plup.* **coeperam****memineram****öderam***F. P.* **coeperō****meminerō****öderō****Imperative**Sing. **mementō**Plural **mementōte****Infinitive***Perf.* **coepisse****meminisse****odisse***Ful.* **coeptūrus esse****ōsūrus esse.****Participles***Perf.* **coeptus, begun****ōsus***Ful.* **coeptūrus****ōsūrus**

Though Perfect in form, **meminī** and **odī** are Present in sense. Similarly the Pluperfect and Future Perfect have respectively the Imperfect and Future meaning.

304.**VOCABULARY****aiō**, ———, ———, ———, *say.***coepī**, **coepisse**, *began, have begun.***duodecim**, *indecl., twelve.***eō**, *adv., thither, to that place.***incipiō**, **ere**, **cēpī**, **ceptus**, *begin.***inquam**, ———, **inquiī**, ———, *say.***meminī**, **meminisse**, *remember.***odī**, **odisse**, *hate.***sinister**, **tra**, **trum**, *left.***turpis**, **e**, *base.***unde**, *whence.***EXERCISES**

305. 1. Aiunt, inquit, aiēbāmus. 2. Inquiisti, ait, inquit. 3. Coepērunt, meminerat, öderis. 4. Odisse, coepissēs, ödit. 5. Hostēs eō, unde rediimus, proficisci incipiunt. 6. Acriter duodecim milia

peditum transeundi initium fecerunt. 7. Barbari omnes iniurias memoraverunt quas maiores sui pertulerunt. 8. Turpes homines semper bonos oderunt. 9. Consules transeundi consilium inire coeperunt. 10. Hostes sinistram cornu circumire incipiunt.

306. 1. He says; we said; you have said. 2. I hate; you hated; we have begun. 3. To be about to hate; you will have begun; they had begun. 4. The cavalry had begun to cross the river. 5. Bad men always remember injuries. 6. They are forming a plan of approaching the city. 7. The women and children of this town will always remember the deeds of the enemy.

Lesson 58

IMPERSONAL VERBS

307. Impersonal Verbs in Latin correspond to the English Impersonal with "it." Thus, **licet**, *it is lawful*; **oportet**, *it is fitting*. These verbs never have a personal subject, but may take an Infinitive, a Clause, or a Neuter Pronoun. Thus **hōc fieri oportet**, *it is necessary that this be done*; **hōc decet**, *this is fitting*. They are conjugated like other verbs, but are used only in the third person singular of the Indicative and Subjunctive, and in the Present and Perfect Infinitive.

308. Some of these verbs are:

accidit	accidere	accidit	<i>it happened</i>
decet	decēre	decuit	<i>it becomes</i>
licet	licēre	licuit	<i>it is permitted</i>
miseret	miserēre	miseritum est	<i>it excites pity</i>
oportet	oportēre	oportuit	<i>it is fitting</i>
paenitet	paenitēre	paenituit	<i>it causes regret</i>

The passive voice of some intransitive verbs is used impersonally. Thus,

curritur	lit. <i>it is run</i>	<i>people run</i>
pugnatum est	lit. <i>it was fought</i>	<i>the battle was fought</i>
ventum est	lit. <i>it has been come</i>	<i>people have come</i>
vivitur	lit. <i>it is lived</i>	<i>people live.</i>

309. VOCABULARY

accēdō, ere, accessī, accessum, draw near, advance.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, yield.

concurrō, ere, curri, concursum, run together.

dicō, ere, dixī, dictus, say.

meliior, ius, better, comp. of bonus.

neglegō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, neglect.

profugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, flee, escape.

quandō, when?

quō, whither, interrogative and relative adv.

recēdō, ere, recessī, recessum, go back, retreat.

EXERCISES

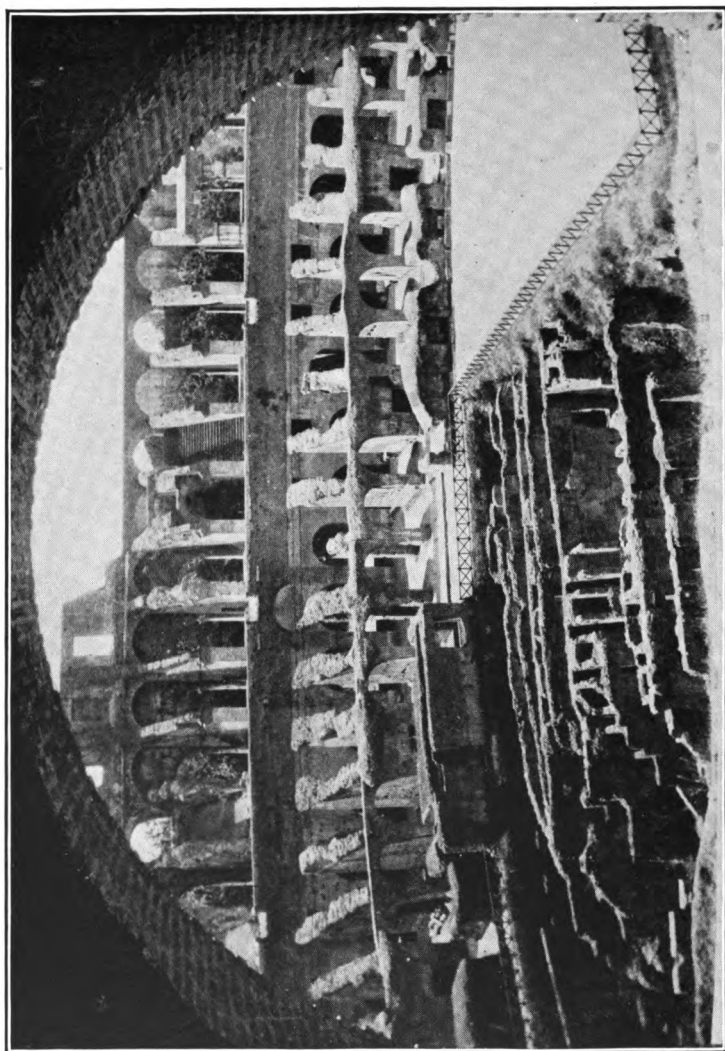
310. 1. Audācter pugnātum est. 2. Recēdendum est hostibus. 3. Maximē ad signa concurritur. 4. Ad cōsulēs nūntiis veniendum est. 5. Quandō ad urbem redibis? 6. Mē paenitet hōc fēcisse. 7. Nōn oportet civēs officia neglegere. 8. A meliōribus ad ducem curritur. 9. Quō nōbīs accēdendum est? 10. Eō vōbīs profugiendum est. 11. Licet res meliōres spērāre. 12. Multa dixī quae dicere oportuit. 13. Meliōrem puerum numquam vīdī. 14. Omnibus audācter resistendum est.

311. 1. We must fight bravely. 2. There was daring fighting (=it was fought boldly) in that place. 3. You will never see a better general. 4. It is permitted to write. 5. It is not fitting to neglect the duties of a citizen. 6. When did the soldiers run (=cursum est., etc.) to the lieutenants? 7. The enemy must come (use passive periphrastic conj.) hither. 8. We must never yield.

REVIEW

312. 1. Omnēs qui potuerunt adfuērunt. 2. Militēs qui vulnera accēperunt absunt. 3. Barbaris venia data est. 4. Inter omnēs qui aderunt iūs iurandum dabitur. 5. Rōmānī impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt. 6. Ab orā maritimā discēdere nolui. 7. In hac urbe manēre malui. 8. De fugā repentinā hostium per perfugās dux certior factus est. 9. Num hostēs transeundi initium fecērunt. 10. Legātī nobiscum de pācis condicionibus colloquēbantur.

Photograph by permission of A. S. Cooley



COLOSSEUM. INTERIOR THROUGH ARCH OF UPPER STAIRWAY ON NORTH SIDE.

PART II.—SYNTAX

Lesson 59

CASES, GENERAL REMARKS AND REVIEW

Latin differs especially from English in what are called its cases.

The case of a noun or adjective is such a change in form as marks its relation to other words in a sentence. The English language no longer possesses a case-system, but the remnants of one may be seen in the strictly possessive case, *John's hat*, etc., and in certain pronouns: *he, him; who, whose, whom*, etc. German, however, still preserves its case-system.

In Latin the order of the words gives us little or no information as to the relation of a noun to the rest of the sentence. The exact relation or syntax of a noun is marked by its case. However, the number of cases in Latin is really only six, and since this number is far too small to express the number of relations which the language must describe, Latin also makes use of many prepositions.

The Nominative and Vocative Cases.

In general, the Nominative case may be said to indicate the subject of the verb. Without such a subject, expressed or understood, the verb is meaningless. Impersonal verbs alone approximate the idea of verbal action without a subject; e.g., *curritur, there is running*.

The uses of the Nominative may be defined in greater detail as follows:

313. The Subject of a Finite Verb (any form of the Indicative, Subjunctive, or Imperative) is in the Nominative Case.

Cicerō scripsit, Cicero wrote.

314. A noun used with, and explaining, another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an Appositive and is said to be in Apposition.

An Appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.

assentātiō adiūtrīx vitiorum, flattery, the promoter of evils.

P. Scipiō, pontifex maximus, Publius Scipio, pontifex maximus.

historia, magistra vitae, history, the teacher of life.

315. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb *sum* or other intransitive verb is called a Predicate Noun.

A Predicate Noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender with the noun which it modifies.

vita rústica parsimōniae magistra est, country life is the teacher of thrift

cōsulēs creantur Caesar et Servilius, Caesar and Servilius are elected consuls.

316. The Vocative Case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, where it usually ends in **-e**.

crēdite mihi, iūdices, believe me, judges.

nāte, mea magna potentia sōlus, my son, thou alone my great power.

317.

VOCABULARY

adiūtrix, icis, f., helper, promoter.

āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, lose.

arcessō, ere, ivi, itus, summon.

armātūra, ae, f., equipment.

assentātiō, ōnis, f., flattery.

auctōritās, ātis, f., authority.

cēterī, ae, a, the rest, the other.

creō, āre, āvi, ātus, create, elect.

cūstōdia, ae, f., custody.

cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., guard, keeper.

historia, ae, f., a narrative of past events, history.

praemium, ī, m., reward.

supersum, esse, fui, remain, be left.

tantus, a, um, so remain, be left.

vērus, a, um, true, genuine.

EXERCISES

318. 1. Galba lēgātus factus est. 2. Cēteri auxilium relictī sunt. 3. Galba, cōsul, multōs milītēs amisit. 4. Omnēs qui supersunt praemia accipient. 5. Milītēs Rōmāni, prō patriā moriāmur. 6. Dux illōs, fortissimōs, arcessivit. 7. Cōsulēs, ducēs exercitūs, maiōrem auctōritātem quam lēgātī habent. 8. Assentātiō numquam est adiūtrix amicitiae vērae. 9. Semper duo virī cōsulēs creantur. 10. Historia est cūstōs rērum gestārum.

319. 1. Brave citizens, you will receive great rewards. 2. The rest were left as guards of the city. 3. True friendship is the promoter of great things. 4. Good men hate flattery. 5. Many men were sent as envoys to the leader. 6. Those who remain will be true friends. 7. You will be elected consuls.

Lesson 60

GENITIVE CASE

320. The Genitive is used to complete or limit the meaning of nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs. Its most important uses may be classified as follows:

Genitive of Possession

321. The Genitive of Possession is used to denote ownership.

potentia Pompei, *Pompey's power.*

domus Ciceronis, *Cicero's house.*

Subjective Genitive

322. The Subjective Genitive denotes the subject of an action implied in a noun.

Caesaris adventus, *the arrival of Caesar.*

timorēs liberōrum, *the fears of the children.*

Objective Genitive

323. The Objective Genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.

cupidō glōriae, *desire for glory.*

cupidus rērum novārum, *desirous of a revolution.*

Genitive of the Whole

324. The Genitive of the Whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken. The part may be expressed by a noun, adjective, or adverb.

eōrum ūna pars, *one part of them.*

plūs auctōritātis, *more authority.*

satis ēloquentiae, sapientiae parum, *enough eloquence, too little wisdom.*

Genitive of Material

325. The Genitive of Material denotes that of which something consists or is made. Strictly speaking it is a genitive of the whole.

talentum auri, *a talent of gold.*

acervus frumentī, *a pile of grain.*

Appositional Genitive

326. The Genitive is sometimes used to define a word of general meaning. This is called the Appositional Genitive.

Trōiae urbem, *the city (of) Troy.*

nōmen amicitiae, *the name (of) friendship.*

Genitive of Quality or Description

327. The Genitive is sometimes used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun. This is known as the Genitive of Quality or Description.

vir magnae virtūtis, a man of great virtue.

adulēscēns nullius cōsiliī, a youth of no judgment.

Genitive of Specification

328. The Genitive of Specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.

praestantia virtūtis, preeminence in virtue.

ferōcēs linguae, bold of tongue.

perītus bellī, skilled in war.

329.

VOCABULARY

acervus, ī, m., heap, pile.

admīror, āri, ātus sum, wonder at, admire.

ancora, ae, f., anchor.

ēloquentia, ae, f., eloquence.

flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, demand.

imperium, ī, n., rule, command.

levis, e, light.

magister, trī, m., master.

modus, ī, m., manner, kind.

nōnnullus, a, um, some.

pābulum, ī, n., forage.

plūs, comp. of *multus*.

Pompeius, **Pompeī**, m., Pompey, a man's name.

quantus, a, um, how much, how great?

satis, enough, indeed.

EXERCISES

330. 1. Pompei potentia maior quam Caesaris nōn erat. 2. Ancorae nāvium amissae erant. 3. Caesar plūs imperii flāgitavit. 4. Ille satis eloquentiae nōn habet. 5. Nōbis cūstōdiam captīvōrum tradiderat. 6. Tantum pābuli superest. 7. Timōres liberōrum et femīnarum quae aderant maximī erant. 8. In castris acervōs frūmentī vīdimus. 9. Peditēs levis amātūrae arcessēmus. 10. Quantum pābuli populus hūius oppidi vōbis tradidit? 11. Urbs Rōmae pulcherrima est.

331. 1. Pompey's soldiers are very brave. 2. We greatly admire the man's eloquence. 3. How much grain was in the fields? 4. Did you

receive enough money? 5. Some horsemen of the Roman army remained with us. 6. Piles of grain were seen in the field. 7. Fear of the enemy impeded the attack. 8. The victory of our soldiers, men of daring, will be most pleasing. 9. Rome was a city of this kind.

Lesson 61

GENITIVE CASE, Continued

Genitive of Charge or Penalty

332. Verbs of accusing, condemning, and acquitting take a genitive of the charge.

accusātus est proditionis, *he was accused of treason.*
capitis condemnārī, *to be condemned to death.*

Genitive with "interest"

333. With interest the person or thing concerned is denoted by the Genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective, i.e., **meā**, **tuā**, **nostrā**, **vestrā**, or **suā**.

patris interest, *it concerns the father.*
meā interest, *it concerns me.*

Genitive with Verbs of Plenty or Want

334. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs, as it is with adjectives meaning plenty or want.

implentur Bacchī, *they are filling themselves with wine.*
egeō cōnsilī, *I need advice.*

Verbs of *Remembering, Forgetting, or Reminding.*

335. **Meminī** and **reminīscor**, when they mean *to be mindful of*; **meminī**, meaning *to mention*; and **oblīviscor**, meaning *to be unmindful of*, take the genitive.

336. **Meminī** and **reminīscor**, meaning literally *to remember, to retain in mind*, and **oblīviscor**, meaning literally *to forget*, take the accusative.

animus praeteritōrum meminit, *the mind remembers the past.*
Achilleū, cūius sup̄rā meminimus, *Achilles, whom I mentioned above.*
Cinnam meminī, *I remember Cinna.*
tōtam causam oblītus est, *he forgot the whole case.*

Genitive with Impersonal Verbs

337. The impersonal verbs **miseret**, *it rouses pity*; **paenitet**, *it causes regret*; **pigret**, *it disgusts*; **pudet**, *it shames*; and **taedet**, *it wearies*, take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

pudet mē tuī, *I am ashamed of you.*
cōrum nōs miseret, *we pity them.*

338.

VOCABULARY

accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call one to account, accuse.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult.*
dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt.*
etiam, *also.*
imperītus, a, um, *inexperienced.*
interest, *it concerns.*
oblīvīscor, ī, **oblītus sum**, *be unmindful, forget.*
pigret, *it disgusts.*
plēnus, a, um, *full.*
prīstinus, a, um, *pristine, former.*
prōditiō, ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason.*
pudet, *it shames.*
reminīscor, ī, *remember.*
taedet, *it wearies.*

EXERCISES

339. 1. Cor bonum plenum est beneficiōrum. 2. Multī mīlites prōditiōnis accūsātī sunt. 3. Nostrā interest. 4. Civium interest. 5. Omnium hārum contumēliarum miminērimus. 6. Prīstinōrum beneficiōrum oblīvīscuntur. 7. Illus dēfectiōnis mīlites paenitet. 8. Captivōrum nōs miseret. 9. Vitae omnium periculōrum plēnae sunt. 10. Malōrum prīstinōrum oblīvīscāmur.

340. 1. He has been accused of the insult. 2. It greatly concerns you. 3. Let us remember the valor of our ancestors. 4. You will never be unmindful of his favors. 5. We are disgusted with this. 6. He always pitied captives. 7. Good men regret this war.

Lesson 62

DATIVE CASE

The Dative is usually used either to denote an indirect object or a person or thing interested in the action of the verb.

Its various uses may be classified as follows:

Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs

341. Transitive verbs take the accusative of the Direct Object and the dative of the Indirect Object.

rēgi haec dicite, *tell the king this.*

hanc pecūniam mihi dat, *he gives me this money.*

Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs

342. Many intransitive verbs take the dative, especially those signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade*, and the like.

amicis cōfidō, *I trust my friends.*

huic legiōni Caesar et indulserat et cōfidēbat, *Caesar had indulged this legion and had confidence in it.*

Indirect Object with Compound Verbs

343. The Dative of the Indirect Object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub,** and **super.**

finitimis bellum inferre, *to make war on one's neighbors.*
exercitui praefuit, *he was in command of the army.*

344. VOCABULARY

cōfidō, ere, fisis sum, semi-dep., *trust.*

faveō, ēre, favī, fautus, *favor.*

indulgeō, ēre, indulsī, indultus, *be kind, indulge in (a thing).*

inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, *bring upon.*

intersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be present.*

mulier, eris, f., *woman.*

noceō, ēre, nī, itūrus, *injure, harm.*

parātus, a, um, *ready, prepared.*

parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *spare.*

persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade.*

placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus, please.

praeficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, put in charge.

praesum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be in charge of.

rēs publica, gen. rei publicae, f., state, commonwealth.

sermō, ōnis, m., conversation.

EXERCISES

345. 1. Militibus haec dicite. 2. Caesar mulieribus et liberis indulgebat. 3. Rei publicae nocēbitis. 4. Cōsulēs castris quae milites fecerant legātum praefecerunt. 5. Barbaris bellum inferre parātī sumus. 6. Caesar his militibus propter virtutem maximē cōfidit. 7. Talēs hominēs nobīs nōn placent. 8. Parcite semper, milites, feminis et liberis. 9. Dūcēs nullis militibus verbis suis persuādere possunt. 10. Legātī sermōnī eius interfuērunt.

346. 1. I especially trusted them. 2. They had already given the soldiers the rewards. 3. He tried to be kind to his enemies also. 4. The barbarians did not always spare the women and children. 5. You will be in charge of the fortification which we have made. 6. Let us persuade our fellow citizens with these words. 7. Caesar put a lieutenant in charge of the smaller camp. 8. Who can bring war upon Italy? 9. The leader's plans pleased no one.

Lesson 63

DATIVE CASE, Continued

Dative of Reference

347. The Dative of Reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

cōnsurrēxērunt omnēs illī, all rose in his honor.

interclūdere hostibus commeātum, to cut off the supplies of the enemy.

Dative of Possession

348. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

tibi est liber, you have a book (lit., a book is to you).

contrōversia mihi fuit cum avunculō tuō, I had a debate with your uncle.

Dative of Agent

349. The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

haec nōbīs agenda sunt, these things must be done by us.

mihi eundem est, I must go.

Dative of Purpose or Tendency

350. The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

cecinit receptuī, he gave the signal for a retreat.

id mūnerī misit, he sent it as a present.

nōbīs sunt odiō, they are an object of hatred to us (literally, they are as a hatred to us).

Dative with Adjectives

351. The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness, hostility, likeness, unlikeness, equality, nearness, relation, fitness, etc.*

par similisque cēterīs, equal to and like the rest.

castrīs idoneum locum dēlēgit, he selected a place suitable for a camp.

352.

VOCABULARY

adversus, a, um, adverse.

canō, ere, cecinī, cantus, sing, play.

commeātus, ūs, m., supplies.

conspectus, ūs, m., view, sight.

dēligō, ere, lēgī, lectum, choose out, select.

facinus, facinoris, n., crime.

interclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, cut off, hinder.

munus, eris, n., duty, favor, gift.

odium, ī, n., hatred.

pēs, pedis, m., foot.

prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, throw, cast.

proximus, a, um, nearest, next.

receptus, ūs, m., retreat.

rīpa, ae, f., bank (of a river).

tēlum, ī, n., javelin.

ūsus, ūs, m., use, service.

EXERCISES

353. 1. Pompeius Caesarī commeātum interclūdere nōn potest.
2. Hostibus nōn sunt equitēs. 3. Barbarī receptui canent. 4. Caesar multis odiō erat. 5. Milītēs, fortiter nōbīs dimicandum est. 6. Castrīs

idōneum locum nōn possumus deligere. 7. Mīlites legātis suis inimici sunt. 8. Quae poena huic facinorī pār est? 9. Ventī adversī nautīs nōn placent. 10. Cōsilia hūius hominis mihi magnō usui erant. 11. Patrēs et filiī semper amandī sunt.

354. 1. The Romans had large armies. 3. The soldiers did many things in his honor. 3. Shields and javelins must be given the soldiers by us. 4. We must go (=it must be gone by us;) at once to the camp. 5. This general always selects a place suitable for a cavalry battle. 6. The most suitable place for the camp is next the sea. 7. The cavalry was not a great service to us here.

Lesson 64

ACCUSATIVE CASE

The Accusative is usually used to complete the meaning of a transitive verb by denoting the immediate object of its action. It has several varying uses, however, all of which may be arranged as follows:

Direct Object

355. The Direct Object of a verb is in the accusative case. It may denote that which is produced or that which is affected.

librum scripsit, he wrote a book.

oppida sua omnia incendunt, they burn all their towns.

Accusative of Exclamation

356. The accusative is used in exclamations.

mē miserum! wretched me! testīs ēgregiōs! fine witnesses!

Two Accusatives. Direct Object and Predicate Accusative.

357. Verbs meaning to *make, choose, call, show*, etc., may take two accusatives, one the direct object, the other a predicate accusative.

**Hamilcarem imperātōrem fecērunt, they made Hamilcar general.
ducem sē praeibuit, he offered himself leader.**

358. A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

hostēs hōc iter periculōsum reddiderant, the enemy had made this road dangerous.

359.

VOCABULARY

alacer, cris, cre, eager.

dictātor, ōris, m., dictator.

efficiō, ere, fecī, fectus, make, render.

ēgregius, a, um, excellent, eminent.
frāter, tris, m., brother.
hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, pass the winter.
iūdex, icis, m., judge.
opportūnus a, um, fit, opportune.
periculōsus, a, um, dangerous.
praetor, ōris, m., praetor.
privātus, a, um, private.
-que, and, enclitic conjunction.
reddō, ere, reddidī, redditus, give back, render.
sentiō, ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel.
tempus, oris, n., time.
timidus, a, um, fearful, afraid.

EXERCISES

369. 1. Equitatum omnem ante se misit. 2. Nos miserōs! 3. Urbem Rōmam vocant. 4. Populus Rōmānus Caesarem dictatōrem fecerunt. 5. Eius verba milites ad pugnam alacriōres effecerant. 6. Omnēs hunc hominem malum iudicant. 7. Tempa aedificiaque privata incendent. 8. Omnēs dolorem sentiunt. 9. Multae calamitates ducem timidum reddiderunt. 10. Eius fratrem egregium iudicaverant. 11. Tempus opportūnum deligamus. 12. Quem praetōrem appellant est iūdex.

361. 1. What a calamity! 2. They have burned all the temples and private buildings. 3. The Roman people made that man praetor. 4. The enemy made that road dangerous. 5. This man was chosen (as) leader. 6. That thing made the soldiers more eager for battle. 7. Let us be brave and daring.

Lesson 65

ACCUSATIVE CASE, Continued

Two Accusatives. Person and Thing

362. Some verbs meaning *to ask, demand, teach, conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing.

mē sententiam rogāvit, he asked me my opinion.
tē litterās doceō, I teach you the letters.
iter omnēs cēlat, he conceals his march from everyone.

Two Accusatives With Compound Verbs

363. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

eōs sua praesidia circumdūxit, *he led them around his fortifications.*

flūmen exercitum tradūxit, *he led his army across the river.*

Accusative of Limit of Motion

364. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, *they send envoys to Caesar.*

ad Italiam vēnit, *he came to Italy.*

365. With names of towns; small islands; **domum**, *home*; **domōs**, *homes*; and **rūs**, *country*, the preposition is regularly omitted.

rus ibō, *I shall go to the country.*

domōs suās discēdunt, *they scatter to their homes.*

Rōmam contendit, *he hastens to Rome.*

Accusative of Extent

366. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

quadrāgintā annōs vixit, *he lived for forty years.*

fossae quīdecim pedes lātae, *trenches fifteen feet wide.*

367.

VOCABULARY

ac (**atque**), *and, and also*; **ac** never used before vowels.

Athēnae, **ārum**, *f., Athens.*

biduum, **i**, *n., two days.*

circumducō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead around.*

cottidiē, *adv., every day, daily.*

domus, **ūs**, *f., house, home.*

ēdoceō, **ēre**, **uī**, **ēdoctus**, *teach.*

Hibērus, **i**, *m., Hiberus, a river in Spain.*

interim, *in the meanwhile.*

obtimeō, **ēre**, **uī**, **tentus**, *occupy, hold.*

ops, **opis**, *f., power, help* (nom. sing. never used); in plu., *resources.*

passus, **ūs**, *m., paces* (five feet).

petō, **ere**, **ivī**, (**ii**), **itus**, *seek, request.*

polliceor, **ērī**, **itus sum**, *promise.*

rēgnum, **i**, *n., kingdom.*

sescentī, **ae**, **a**, *six hundred.*

trādūcō, **ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead across.*

EXERCISES

368. 1. Mē cōsilia sua celavit. 2. Milites castra circumducet. 3. Te multa edocet. 4. Legatus interim copias flumen traduxit. 5. Caesar cottidie Haeduos omnia, quae polliciti erant, flagitabat. 6. Ad provinciam proficiscamur. 7. Biduum in his locis mansit. 8. Me sententiam rogavit. 9. Paucos milites domum reduxit. 10. Quando Athenas rediit? 11. Roma ab illo loco sescentos passus abest. 12. Haec turris triginta pedes alta est. 13. Decem milia passuum reducti eramus.

369. 1. I asked him many things. 2. We have advanced ten miles from Rome. 3. The barbarians have concealed their march from the Romans. 4. Caesar would have led his troops across the Ebro. 5. We will remain in Italy for two years. 6. Let us go to Rome at once. 7. I demanded of him the money which he owed me. 8. He held the kingdom for a short time. 9. Will he be able to teach us many things? 10. When did they return home?

Lesson 66

ABLATIVE CASE

370. The Ablative has the functions of three originally distinct cases—the true Ablative or from-case, the Instrumental or with-case, and the Locative or place-where-case.

It gives additional information about the mode of the action of the verb, in addition to those presented by the direct and indirect object. Its sphere of action is very great, since it can express the source, cause, instrument, time, place, manner, circumstances, of the action of the verb, as well as the point from which motion takes place.

We may detail the uses of the Ablative as follows:

TRUE ABLATIVE USES

Ablative of Separation

371. Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of freeing, depriving, and lacking.

tē ab eō liberō, I free you from him.

oppugnātiōne desistunt, they cease from the siege.

omnibus rebus egere, to be in want of everything.

Ablative of Agent

372. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **a** or **ab**.

ab senātū amicus appellātus erat, *he had been called friend by the senate.*

a Caesare accūsātus est, *he was accused by Caesar.*

Ablative of Comparison

373. Comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case as the first thing compared. However, the second thing compared may be put in the ablative and the **quam** omitted.

nihil est virtūte amābilius, *nothing is more lovely than virtue.*

patria mihi vitā cārior est, *to me my fatherland is dearer than life.*

374. The comparatives **plūs**, **minus**, **amplius**, and **longius** may take the ablative, but they usually have the force of **plūs quam**, **minus quam**, **amplius quam**, and **longius quam**.

tēcum plūs annum vixit, *he lived with you more than a year.*

Ablative of Cause¹

375. The Ablative is used to denote Cause. The Ablative of Cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

ille timōre, ego risū corruī, *he collapsed from fear, I from laughter.*

multa glōriæ cupiditāte fēcit, *he did many things because of his love of glory.*

ab irā, *on account of anger.*

376.

VOCABULARY

amābilis, e, *worthy of love, lovely.*

amplius, *more.*

amplus, a, um, *great, glorious.*

corruō, ere, uī, ——— *fall down, collapse.*

dēsistō, ere, stitī, ——— *cease.*

dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement.*

egeō, ēre, uī, ——— *need, lack.*

expellō, ere, pulī, pulsus, *drive out.*

nāscor, ī, nātus sum, *be born.*

obsidiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*

occidō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, *kill.*

¹ This ablative is partly Separative and partly Instrumental.

oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., *siege.*

possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*

repellō, ere, reppulī, repulsus, *drive back, repel.*

rīsus, ūs, m., *laughter.*

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred.*

servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude, bondage.*

vīgintī, twenty, *indecl.*

EXERCISES

377. 1. Rōmānī auxiliō maxime egent. 2. Socii dissensiōne destitērunt. 3. Eōs a barbaris liberābimus. 4. Pompeius a Caesare repulsus est. 5. Patria mihi vitā carior est. 6. Plus mille hostēs possessiōnibus nostris expulsi sunt. 7. Impetum hostium repellere dissensiōnibus nōn possumus. 8. Quae mulier est melior matrē? 9. Nēmō hostēs ab his munitiōnibus prohibere poterit. 10. Illud oppidum obsidiōne liberāvimus. 11. Plus vīginti hominēs occisi sunt. 12. Diū atque acriter a nostris pugnātum est. 13. Quid melius est quam virtūs? 14. Eōs a servitūte liberāmus.

378. 1. The enemy were driven from their camp by the Romans. 2. What is more glorious than a great victory? 3. For many causes the fortification collapsed. 4. The horses were in need of forage. 5. More than a thousand infantry men were killed in that battle. 6. Many men will be freed from bondage by us. 7. Because of a disagreement seven hundred soldiers withdrew from the army. 8. We are especially in need of grain.

Lesson 67

ABLATIVE CASE, Continued

INSTRUMENTAL USES

Ablative of Accompaniment

379. Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**.

cum Pānsā vīxī, *I have lived with Pansa.*

nōbiscum hostēs contendērunt, *the enemy fought with us.*

Ablative of Manner

380. The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition **cum** is also used.

reliquiās cum cūrā exsecūtus est, he followed up the remainder carefully.
fieri nūllō pactō potest, it can be done in no way.

Ablative of Quality

381. The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

vir magnā virtūte, a man of great courage.
statūrā fuit humili, he was of low stature.

Ablative of Means

382. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

exercitus interitus est ferrō, the army was destroyed by the sword.

383. The Ablative of Means is also used with the following:

(a) The deponents **ūtor, I use; fruor, I enjoy; fungor, I perform; potior, I am master of; and vescor, I feed on. vitā fruitur, he enjoys life. lacte et carne vescēbantur, they lived on milk and meat.**

(b) **Opus est and usus est, there is need. duce opus est, there is need of a leader.**

(c) Verbs meaning *to fill*, and adjectives meaning *full*. **fossam aggere explent, they fill the trench with earth.**

384.

VOCABULARY

addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, lead on, impel.

conficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, exhaust.

dētrīmentum, ī, n., loss, damage.

dignitās, ātis, f., dignity, rank.

ēruptiō, ōnis, f., sally.

fruor, ī, fructus sum, enjoy.

fungor, ī, functus sum, perform, execute.

gravitās, ātis, f., heaviness, violence:

laccessō, ere, laccessīvī, laccessītus, harass.

lapis, idis, m., stone.

nocturnus, a, um, at night.

pervenīō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come, arrive.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, take possession of, acquire.

ratiō, ōnis, f., reason.

recipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, take back; with reflexive se, to retreat.

ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, use.

vescor, vescī, feed, eat.

EXERCISES

385. 1. Hic homo magnā gravitate loquitur. 2. Cum exercitū Rōmā sē recēpit. 3. Ad urbem vōbiscum properābimus. 4. Magnā celeritate opus est. 5. Equi pābulō vescuntur. 6. Vir magnā dignitate fuit. 7. Exercitum cum magnō detrimentō contrā hostēs addūxit. 8. Nāves his causis ad portum sē recipere coāctae sunt. 9. Aestate maxime fruimur. 10. Fossās lapidibus complēbunt. 11. Impetū nocturnō facile castris potiti sunt. 12. Helvētiī summā celeritate ad finēs Gallōrum pervēnerunt.

386. 1. The envoys spoke with dignity. 2. Because of the many attacks the army was exhausted. 3. The enemy advanced against the town with great loss. 4. He executed the commands of the leader quickly. 5. The inhabitants of the town harassed our men with stones. 6. Because of his desire for glory he did many bad things. 7. They were unable to withdraw without great loss. 8. Let us enjoy the many things of life in a good manner.

Lesson 68

ABLATIVE CASE, Continued

INSTRUMENTAL USES, Continued

Ablative Absolute

387. Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas.

Two nouns or an adjective and a noun may also be used in the ablative absolute construction.

388. The main ideas expressed by the Ablative Absolute are the following:

(a) Time.

Lepidō et Tullō cōsulibus, when *Lepidus and Tullus were consuls or in the consulship of Lepidus and Tullus.*

(b) Cause.

nūllō adversante rēgnum obtinuit, since no one opposed him, he secured the throne.

(c) Manner.

incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit, with his horse at full speed he rushed upon the enemy.

(d) Condition.

omnes virtūtēs iacent, voluptāte dominante, all virtues lie prostrate, if pleasure reigns supreme.

(e) Concession.

perditis omnibus rēbus pugnābant, although everything was lost, they fought on.

Ablative of Price

389. The ablative is used with verbs of buying and selling to denote the price.

dēnāriūs tribus aestimāvit, he valued it at three denarii.

Ablative of Degree of Difference

390. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

ūnō diē longiōrem mēnsem faciunt, they made the month longer by a day.

Ablative of Specification

391. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

hominēs nōn rē sed nōmine, men not in fact but in name.

392. The ablative of specification is used with **dignus, worthy,** and **indignus, unworthy.**

amīcī dignī amīcitā, friends worthy of friendship.

393.

VOCABULARY

adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, oppose.

aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, determine, estimate.

ante, adv., before.

antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, precede.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f., conspiracy.

dignus, a, um, worthy.

emō, ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy.

indignus, a, um, unworthy.

Gallus, ī, m., a Gaul.

nihilō, abl., by nothing.

paulō, abl., by a little.

post, adv., afterwards.

salvus, a, um, safe, sound.

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, loose; of ships, unmoor; naves solvere, set sail.

talentum, ī, n., a talent (not a coin, but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about \$1200.00).

vēndō, ere, vēdidī, vēditus, sell.

EXERCISES

394. 1. M. Messalla et M. Pisōne cōsulibus coniuratiōnem fecerunt
 2. Multis adversantibus flūmen trāstibimus. 3. Vivō Caesare, rēs
 pūblica salva erat. 4. Servum magnō pretiō ēmit. 5. Illōs agrōs decem
 talentis vēdidit. 6. Haec turris decem pedibus altior est. 7. Hic
 homō paulō quam ille altior est. 8. Rōmāni omnibus populis Italiae
 virtūte praestābant. 9. Milites qui fortiter dīmīcāvērunt honōre digni
 sunt. 10. Nēmō Caesare auctōritāte superābat. 11. Ventō magnō,
 nāves solvunt. 12. Caesare duce, Rōmāni agrōs Gallōrum vexāvērunt et
 oppida eōrum cēperunt.

395. 1. Although the winds opposed, they tried to set sail. 2. In the
 consulship of M. Messala and M. Piso a few conspiracies took place. 3.
 Since no one opposed them they set out at once. 4. He will sell this build-
 ing for a talent. 5. The tower is ten feet higher than the fortification.
 6. These men whom you have seen are worthy of friendship. 7. Our
 soldiers surpassed all in courage. 8. When all the enemy had been over-
 come, the general returned to winter quarters.

Lesson 69

Ablative Case, Continued

LOCATIVE USES

Ablative of Place

396. The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the
 ablative with **in**.

in urbe habitat, he lives in the city.

Names of towns, however—except singulars of the First and Second
 Declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

Cūmis, at Cumae. Carthagine, at Carthage.

397. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the
 preposition **ab, de, or ex**.¹

ab Italiā profectus est, he set out from Italy.

Names of towns, however; **domo, from home; rure, from the country,**
 use the ablative without a preposition.

Calibus profectus est, he set out from Cales.

¹ Place from which is, strictly speaking, a "True Ablative," but it is taken
 up here for the sake of convenience.

Ablative of Time

398. The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

superiōre aestāte, *in the previous summer.*

proximis comitiis, *at the last election.*

399. Extent of time is sometimes expressed by the ablative. The accusative is usual, however.

tōtā nocte iērunt, *they went during the whole night.*

Locative Case

400. The Locative Case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the First and Second Declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī**, *at home*; **humī**, *on the ground*; **bellī** and **militiae**, *in war*; **rurī**, *in the country*.

Rōmae, *at Rome*, **Corinthī**, *at Corinth*.

401.

VOCABULARY

Aprīlis, *e*, adj., *of April*.

dēspērō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *despair*.

habitō, *āre*, *āvī*, *ātus*, *dwel*, *reside*.

kalendae, *ārum*, *f.*, *kalends* (first of the month).

restituō, *ere*, *uī*, *ūtus*, *restore*.

trīdium, *i*, *n.*, *three days*.

tertius, *a*, *um*, *third*.

vigilia, *ae*, *f.*, *watch* (of the night).

EXERCISES

402. 1. In illa urbe duos annos habitabamus. 2. In exercitu Caesaris saepe erant dissensiones. 3. Roma in Galliam contendebat. 4. Romam tertio die redibo. 5. Tertia vigilia e castris profecti sumus. 6. Kalendis Aprilibus coniurationem reppererunt. 7. Romae aedificia pulchra sunt. 8. Roma Corinthum exercitus contendet. 9. Athenis triduum morabimur. 10. Eo tempore cives omnes de sua salute desperabant.

403. 1. They will delay three days in Athens. 2. On the island are large trees and pretty flowers. 3. On the first (Kalends) of April I saw you and your friends at Rome. 4. Let us hasten from Rome into Gaul. 5. On that night we will return to Corinth. 6. At the first watch the consul set out with all his troops. 7. In what year were you consul? 8. For many days we despaired of our safety. 9. In a short time he restored the town and villages which he had destroyed.

Lesson 70

SYNTAX OF ADJECTIVES

404. Adjectives and participles are often used as substantives in the plural. The masculine denotes persons, the neuter denotes things.

nostrī, *our men.*

varium et mutābile semper femina, *woman is always a variable and changeable thing.*

bona, *good things.*

405. Adjectives are often used where English uses the adverb.

invītus fēcī, *I did it unwillingly.*

Comparatives and Superlatives

406. Comparatives and Superlatives are often used when they do not denote a definite comparison; the comparative having the idea of *rather somewhat, too*; the superlative signifying *very*.

senectūs est nātūrā loquācior, *old age is by nature rather talkative.*

vir fortissimus, *a very brave man.*

407. The superlative is used with **quam**, or **quam** and a form of **possum**, to denote the highest degree possible.

quam mātūrrimē, *as early as possible.*

quam maximīs potest itineribus in Galliam contendit, *he hastens into Gaul by the longest possible marches.*

408. When two qualities are compared, both adjectives or adverbs are in the comparative, or, if **magis** is used, both are kept in the positive.

verior quam grātior, *more true than agreeable.*

Celer disertus magis est quam sapiēns, *Celer is more eloquent than wise.*

409. Certain adjectives are used in agreement to denote a part of an object: as **medius**, *middle of*; **reliquus**, *rest of*; **extrēmus**, *last part of*; **imū**, *bottom of*; **summus**, *top of*.

summus mōns, *the top of the mountain.*

in colle mediō, *on the middle of the hill.*

410.

VOCABULARY

abeō, *ire, ii, itūrus*, *go away.*

crēdō, *ere, didi, ditum*, *believe.*

extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of*.
hiems, is, f., *winter*.
hortor, āri, ātus sum, *exhort*.
invitus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant*.
loquax, ācis, *talkative, loquacious*.
mātūrus, a, um, *right, proper, speedy*.
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator*.
plērique, aequē, aque, *most*.
prōcēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *advance*.
respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, *answer, reply*.
sapiens, entis, *wise*.
senectus, ūtis, f., *old age*.

EXERCISES

411. 1. Nostrī fortēs sunt. 2. Plēraque illi placent. 3. Inviti haec crēdunt. 4. Eruptiō nostrōrum erat subitissima. 5. Via gravior erat. 6. Numerus militum quam maximus sit. 7. Haec fēmina pulchrior quam grātior est. 8. Ille ōrātor loquax magis est quam sapiens. 9. In summō colle nostrī fortiter resistēbant. 10. Multī mediā nocte ex castris ēgressi sunt.

412. 1. The enemy made the attack unwillingly. 2. Our (men)¹ will not believe such (things). 3. The march was rather difficult. 4. The trees on the island are very beautiful. 5. Such people are more talkative than wise. 6. On the middle of the mountain is a building. 7. We will set out with the longest possible marches.

REVIEW

413. 1. Caesar et Servilius cōsulēs creābantur. 2. Cōsulēs, ducēs exercitūs magnam auctōritātem habent. 3. Timorēs militum in castris maximī erant. 4. Barbarōrum illōs miseret. 5. Caesar fēminis et liberis semper parcebāt. 6. Ille nōbis magnō usui erat. 7. Nos miserōs! Templā aedificiaque nostra incendunt. 8. Magistrī nōs multa edocēbunt. 9. Nōne Caesar Rōmam redibit? 10. Plūs viginti hominēs aderunt. 11. Hic homo magnā celeritāte ad urbem properābit. 12. Illōs agrōs magnō pretiō vēdidit. 13. Militibus dimicantibus, ille Rōmam properābat.

¹ Do not translate words in parentheses.

Lesson 71

SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS

414. The ending of the verb denotes the person. Therefore personal pronouns are expressed as subjects of verbs only in case of emphasis or contrast.

ego rēgēs ēiēcī, vōs tyrannōs intrōdūcītis, I drove out kings, you are bringing in tyrants.

415. The genitive singular of the personal pronouns (i.e., **meī, tuī**) and of the reflexive (i.e., **suī**) is usually used as an objective genitive. The possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, and suus** are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive.

416. The genitives plural **nostrī** and **vestrī** are used only as objective genitives; the forms **nostrum** and **vestrum** as genitives of the whole.

habētis ducem memorem vestrī, oblītum suī, you have a leader mindful of you, forgetful of himself.

nēmō vestrum, no one of you.

417. The possessive adjectives (commonly called pronouns) are usually used only for the purpose of clearness.

mātre[m] amō, I love my mother.

tuam mātre[m] amō, I love your mother.

Alius and Alter

418. **Alius** means *another* of a group of more than two. **Alter** means either *one* or *the other* of two, or the *second* in a series.

The phrases **alius . . . alius**, and **alter . . . alter** are used correlatively, meaning respectively *one . . . another, the one . . . the other*.

The plural **aliī . . . aliī** is translated *some . . . others*.

dīvitiās aliī praepōnunt, aliī potentiam, some prefer wealth, others power.

419.

VOCABULARY

coniciō, ere, coniciēcī, coniectus, hurl.

differō, ferre, distulī, dilātus, differ.

exitus, ūs, m., exit, passage.

fidūcia, ae, f., confidence.

institutum, ī, n., institution.

laus, laudis, f., praise.

memor, oris, mindful.

mereor, ēri, meritus sum, deserve.

miseriordia, ae, f., pity.

perdō, ere, didi, ditus, lose.

premō, ere, pressi, pressus, press, crowd.

subeō, ire, ii, iturus, approach.

EXERCISES

420. 1. Ducis nostri laus nobis grata erat. 2. Multi nostrum morientur. 3. Omnes nos misericordia vestri movebamus. 4. Semper este nostrum memores. 5. Pater maximam laudem meretur. 6. Quae plus quam mater tua laudem meretur? 7. Horum filiorum alter occisus,¹ alter captus est. 8. Aliud loquitur, aliud sentit. 9. Omnes populi institutis atque legibus inter se differunt. 10. Milites in castris sese premebant.

421. 1. I will withdraw at once, you will advance. 2. We were greatly moved by your recollection of us. 3. No one of us will ever deserve such praise. 4. Not even at that time did any one of you withdraw. 5. The ships of the enemy crowded themselves in the passage of the harbor. 6. Some will hurl javelins, others will approach the fortification. 7. One has been killed, the other has been freed. 8. On that very night this captive fled to his own (people).

Lesson 72

GENERAL REMARKS ON MOODS

By a mood is meant a special form assumed by the verb to indicate the particular shade of thought that an author wishes to convey to his readers, or a speaker to his hearers.

I. Thus the indicative mood, as its name implies, is used to point out (**indicat**) a fact, stated by the author on his own responsibility. The fact is, was, or shall be true in itself, whether anyone ever notices it or not; e.g., *he is well, he was well, he will be well.*

II. The imperative mood is used not to point out a fact, but to command or will a fact; e.g., *go ye.*

III. The difference between these two moods is clear. The infinitive mood is hardly a mood at all, but rather the verb used as a noun, e.g., **videre, the act of seeing.** In Latin, however, it is very widely used as the mood of indirect discourse.

¹*Est* is to be supplied from the following *captus est*.

IV. The subjunctive is the mood which causes the most trouble in the study of Latin. In Latin it has many varied uses, while in English it hardly exists at all.

Thus in Latin the subjunctive is used not to point out a fact, but to add to the simple statement of the indicative some further idea of *uncertainty* or *possibility*. In general it is used to express something which we regard as a mere conception of the mind, such as

- (a) That which we purpose or wish to be a fact.
- (b) That which we refer to as the result of another fact.
- (c) That which we state on authority other than our own.

It should be remembered that conjunctions do not govern mood. The choice of the mood should be made chiefly on a consideration of the sense of the passage, and not because of the presence of certain conjunctions.

All the many uses of the subjunctive which will follow may be summed up under the foregoing three general heads.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

Hortatory Subjunctive

422. The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is *nē*.

amēmus patriam, let us love our fatherland.
nē eāmus, let us not go.

Deliberative Subjunctive

423. The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The present tense is used for present time, the imperfect, rarely the perfect, for past time. The negative is *nōn*.

quid igitur faciam? what then shall I do?
quid facerem? what was I to do?
ego nōn venīrem? was I not to come?

424.

VOCABULARY

adeō, adv., so much, to such a degree.
cōsīdō, ere, sēdī, settle.
cūra, ae, f., trouble, care.
cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, care for, take care of.
dīmīttō, ere, mīsī, missus, let go.
disciplīna, ae, f., discipline.
laedō, ere, laesī, laesus, hurt, injure.
nē, not.

retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, retain.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take.

tegō, ere, texī, tectus, cover.

EXERCISES

425. 1. Omnes cūras hodiē dīmittāmus! 2. Mōres et disciplinam maiōrum nostrōrum semper retineāmus! 3. Nēmō fēminās aut liberōs laedat! 4. Gallī in prōvincia Rōmānā nē cōnsīdant! 5. Ego nōn omnia tegerem? 6. Quid igitur loquātur? 7. Quid facerēmus? 8. Germānōs a Rhēnō prohibeāmus! 9. Rōmam contendāmus!

426. 1. Let us not let this opportunity go! 2. Let them take care of all their own affairs! 3. Let us all return home! 4. What were they to say? 5. Shall we not defend the fatherland? 6. Let us never forget our friends!

Lesson 73

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN INDEPENDENT SENTENCES

Continued

Optative Subjunctive

427. The subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**.

The present tense is used where the wish is represented as possible, i.e., in future time; the imperfect for a wish unattained in present time; and the pluperfect for a wish unattained in past time.

The present tense may be preceded by **utinam**; the imperfect and pluperfect are regularly preceded by **utinam**: (**utinam**) **sint beātī**, *may they be blessed*.

utinam Clōdius viveret, *would that Clodius were alive.*

utinam nē vēnisset, *would that he had not come.*

Potential Subjunctive

428. The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may, should or would*; i.e., possibilities, softened assertions, etc. The negative is **nōn**.

The present and perfect denote a present or future possibility; the imperfect a past possibility.

hoc vōbīs incrēdibile videātur, *this may seem to you incredible.*

nōn facile dixerim, *I could not easily say.*

hoc quis arbitrārētur, *who would have thought this?*

429.

VOCABULARY

comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, *seize*.
 cōsūmō, ere, sūmpsi, sūmptus, *use up*.
 dō, dāre, dedī, datus, *give, render*.
 impūne, adv., *with impunity*.
 intellegō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, *know, understand*.
 iūs, iūris, n., *right, power*.
 opera, ae, f., *assistance*.
 patior, ī, passus sum, *suffer*.
 paullātim, *little by little, gradually*.
 praeclārus, a, um, *splendid, grand*.
 utinam, *affirmative particle*.

EXERCISES

430. 1. Omnēs suspiciōnēs inter amicōs āvertantur! 2. Utinam eōs vtdissēmus! 3. Utinam omnēs salvi domum redeāmus! 4. Fortūnam facilius reperiās quam retineās. 5. Omnia in eō locō vidērēs. 6. Quis talia arbitrātur? 7. Utinam nē opēs suās cōsūmpsisset! 8. Utinam talia nē passi essent! 9. Utinam hanc aestātem in his operibus nē cōsūmpsissēmus!

431. 1. They may approve your plans. 2. Would that they had given me an opportunity! 3. You might have found many dangers there. 4. May we never leave our fatherland! 5. Would that he had not abandoned his duty! 6. He may see his parents in Rome. 7. May they bring us assistance at once!

Lesson 74

COMMANDS

Affirmative

432. Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

proficiscere; ēdūc tēcum omnēs tuōs, *depart; take out with you all your companions*.

mihi ignōsce, *pardon me*.

Negative

433. Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed in any one of three ways.

(a) nōlī or nōlīte with the infinitive.

(b) **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive.

(c) perfect subjunctive with **nē**.

nōlī hoc putāre, *don't think this.*

cavē (**nē**) **fēstīnēs**, *do not be in a hurry.*

nē audīveris, *hear not.*

434.

VOCABULARY

dictum, **i**, n., *word, utterance.*

ērudio, **ire**, **ivī** or **ii**, **itus**, *instruct, teach.*

familiāris, **e**, *intimate, familiar.*

finiō, **ire**, **ivī** or **ii**, **itus**, *limit, bound, end.*

flētus, **ūs**, m., *weeping.*

ignoscō, **ere**, **nōvī**, **nōtus**, *pardon, excuse.*

ingenium, **i**, n., *talent, natural disposition.*

lacrimae, **ārum**, f., plu., *tears.*

lēniō, **ire**, **ivī**, or **ii**, **itus**, *mollify, mitigate.*

ornātus, **ūs**, m., *ornament, dress.*

plōrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *weep.*

EXERCISES

435. 1. **Nōbīs**, **militēs**, **operam** **date**. 2. **Relinquit** **hunc** **locum** **statim**, **et** **domum** **redite**! 3. **Omnibus** **quī** **adsunt** **ignōscite**. 4. **Rōmam** **nōlī** **festināre**. 5. **Dicta** **tua** **nē** **finīveris**. 6. **Cavē** **plōrēs** **calamitatēs**. 7. **Labōrēs** **captīvōrum** **lēnite**. 8. **Talia** **nē** **ērudīveris**. 9. **Omnēs** **ornātūs** **dimitte**.

436. 1. Pardon all the soldiers who were absent. 2. Excuse his words as much as possible. 3. Do not advance to the town. 4. Let them mitigate the labors of those men. 5. Let us excuse the weeping even of men. 6. Do not withdraw from that place now.

Lesson 75

TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES

437.

Sequence of Tenses

The use of the various tenses of the subjunctive in independent sentences has been given under each of the different kinds of independent subjunctives.

The use of the tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses depends on the following laws known as Sequence of Tenses.

The tenses of the indicative and subjunctive are divided into two classes; primary or principal, and secondary or historical.

Under primary or principal tenses come the present, future, present perfect, and future perfect indicative; and the present and perfect subjunctive.

Under secondary or historical are the imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect indicative; and the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive.

Note that the perfect indicative has two uses, as a present perfect denoting action just completed in present time; and as a historical perfect denoting definite past action.

In subordinate clauses which take the subjunctive, only primary tenses may follow primary tenses in the main clause; and only secondary tenses may follow secondary tenses in the main clause.

The present and imperfect subjunctive denote incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action, just as in the indicative.

438. Thus indirect questions always take the subjunctive in Latin, and the various rules of Sequence of Tenses are illustrated by the following examples.

Primary or Principal Sequence

- (a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.

rogō quid faciās, *I ask what you are doing.*

rogābō quid faciās, *I shall ask what you are doing.*

rogāverō quid faciās, *I shall have asked what you are doing.*

- (b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.

rogō quid fēceris, *I ask what you have done.*

rogābō quid fēceris, *I shall ask what you have done.*

rogāverō quid fēceris, *I shall have asked what you have done.*

Secondary or Historical Clause

- (a) Incomplete Action in the Subordinate Clause.

rogābam quid facerēs, *I asked what you were doing.*

rogāvī quid facerēs, *I asked what you were doing.*

rogāveram quid facerēs, *I had asked what you were doing.*

- (b) Completed Action in the Subordinate Clause.

rogābam quid fēcissēs, *I asked what you had done.*

rogāvī quid fēcissēs, *I asked what you had done.*

rogāveram quid fēcissēs, *I had asked what you had done.*

439.

VOCABULARY

coniungō, ere iūnxī, iūnctus, unite.

consuētūdō, inis, f., custom, habit.

Crassus, i, m., *Crassus* (a man's name).
existō, ere, existī, existum, *arise.*
magnitūdo, inis, f., *size, extent.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
pietās, ātis, f., *affection, piety.*
remanēō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
sciō, ire, scivī, scītus, *know.*
societās, ātis, f., *association, alliance.*
ūtilitās, ātis, f., *advantage.*

EXERCISES

440. 1. Sciunt quae exstiterint. 2. Videbāmus quās mūnitiōnēs hostēs facerent. 3. In illō locō trēs hōrās remanēte. 4. Scient quid factum sit. 5. Castra in locis superiōribus pone. 6. Duōs exercitūs nē coniūnxeris. 7. Scivimus quae legiō castra dēfendisset. 8. Nōn scivimus in quibus castris milites Rōmāni essent. 9. Videāmus quae nūntiū nūntient. 10. Utinam operā tuā ūsus essem!

441. 1. Do not tell the extent of the revolt. 2. Let us see what the alliance of the Gauls has accomplished. 3. The advantages of an alliance should be many. 4. We knew what disasters the enemy had suffered. 5. They will know at once what the general thinks. 6. They knew what advantages they had received from the state. 7. We should scarcely believe you.

Lesson 76

CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

442. Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

The rules of sequence of tenses are followed strictly as in all subordinate subjunctive clauses.

oportet ēsse, ut vīvas, nōn vīvere ut edas, *you should eat, that you may live, not live that you may eat.*

portās clausit, nē quam oppidāni iniūriam acciperent, *he closed the gate, in order that the townspeople might not receive any injury.*

443. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

lēgātum mittit, quī Caesarem videat, *he sends his lieutenant to see Caesar.*

habēbam quō cōfugerem, *I had a place where I could take refuge.*

444. When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quō**.

adiūtā mē, quō id fiāt facilius, help me in order that this may be done more easily.

RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC.—CAUSAL CLAUSES

Clauses of Characteristic

445. When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

secūtae sunt tempestātēs quae nostrōs in castris continērent, storms followed which kept our men in camp.

446. The Clauses of Characteristic are used especially after such words and phrases as **tālis, sōlus, dignus, indignus, sunt quī, nemo est quī, unus est quī**, etc.

sunt quī dicant, there are those who say.

ūnus est sōlus inventus quī dissidēret, only one man was found who disagreed.

Causal Clauses

447. Clauses introduced by **quod, quia, and quoniam, because**, take the indicative if the reason is given as a fact and on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; if not given as a fact or given on the authority of some one else, the subjunctive is used.

quia nātūra mūtārī nōn potest, idcirco vērae amicitiae sempiternae sunt, because nature cannot change, therefore true friendships are everlasting.

noctū ambulābat in publicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset, Themistocles used to walk in public at night, because (he said) he could not get to sleep.

448. **Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

Haeduī cum sē dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, since the Haedui could not defend themselves, they sent deputies to Caesar.

449.

VOCABULARY

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, approach.

commūtātiō, ōnis, f., change.

cōsistō, ere, cōstitī, consist.

cum, because, since.

dēspiciō, ere, exī, ectus, despise.

iūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, swear, take oath.

nē, lest, that . . . not.

obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, blockade.

paucitās, ātis, f., fewness, small number.

quō, in order that; regularly used when followed by a comparative.

quod, because.

quoniam, inasmuch as, conj.

ūnus, a, um, one, alone.

ut, that, in order that.

EXERCISES

450. Caesar in Galliam festināvit, nē tantae nātiōnēs coniungerentur. 2. Omnēs remanēbunt ut suspiciōnem timōris vitent. 3. Oppidum mūnīvimus quō hostibus facilius resisterēmus. 4. Nūntium Rōmam mīsīt qui omnia nūntiāret. 5. Sunt qui tālia dicant. 6. Multi sunt qui haec sciant. 7. Hostēs acriter pugnābant, quod fēminae et liberī eōs accendēbant. 8. Milites ad Caesarem vēnerunt quod legātōs dēspicerent. 9. Germānī appropinquant, cum Rōmānōs propter paucitatem dēspiciant. 10. Magna commūtatiō rerum facta est quoniam Caesar vēnit.

451. 1. They are approaching the camp that they may attack it. 2. We fortified the place that it might be defended more easily. 3. There are soldiers who always fight bravely. 4. The Germans sent envoys to ask for peace. 5. Because they saw the great number of men they did not attack. 6. The leader accuses his soldiers because (=on the ground that) they did not resist the enemy. 7. There was no one who did not take oath.

Lesson 77

CLAUSES OF RESULT.—CONCESSIVE CLAUSES

Result Clauses

452. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The negative is **nōn**.

sunt ita multī, ut eōs carcer capere nōn possit, they are so many that a prison can not hold them.

Concessive Clauses

453. Clauses introduced by **quamquam, although**, take the indicative.

quamquam festinās, nōn est mora longa, although you are in a hurry, the delay is not long.

454. quamvis and cum, meaning although, take the subjunctive.

senectūs quamvis nōn sit gravis, tamen aufert viriditatem, although old age is not burdensome, nevertheless it takes away one's energy.

cum primī ordinēs concidissent, tamen reliquī resistēbant, although the first ranks gave way, yet the rest resisted.

455.

VOCABULARY

ardeō, ēre, -rsī, -rsus, take fire, kindle.

carcer, eris, m., prison, jail.

comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, find out.

famulus, ī, m., servant, attendant.

festus, a, um, solemn, festive.

impendeō, ēre, ———, ———, overhang, threaten.

ordo, inis, m., order, rank or line (of soldiers)

perpaucus, a, um, very little, very few.

renovo, āre, āvi, ātus, renew.

sublevō, āre, āvi, ātus, relieve.

tam, so (of degree).

viriditās, ātis, f., freshness, vigor.

EXERCISES

456. 1. Nōn tam barbari sunt, ut haec nōn sciant. 2. Rōmāni angustias obsidebunt, ut hostēs ex finibus suis exire nōn possint. 3. Quamquam nostri proelium renovāverunt, Galli non discesserunt. 4. Quamvis in tinā virtute omnis spes salutis cōsisteret, impetum sustinere nōn potuerunt. 5. Ducēs socios accūsant quod ab eis nōn subleventur. 6. Quamquam latro in carcere erat, omnes timebant. 7. Impetus statim factus est ut perpauci hostium fugerent. 8. Galli castra obsederant nē nūntiī exire possent. 9. Adulēscentēs viriditatem habent quae nōn est in senectute. 10. Cum causam comperire nōn possent, aedificia omnia subito ardebant.

457. 1. Who is there that (=who) is so foolish. 2. Romans are so brave that they fear no one. 3. Let us make the attack suddenly so that the enemy will be greatly terrified. 4. Although the town was well fortified, the people did not defend it. 5. Such words were spoken by the delegates that Caesar dismissed them at once. 6. The general decided to send delegates to him to ask for a conference.

Lesson 78

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

Temporal Clauses with *cum*

458. *Cum*, meaning *when*, takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

Rōmae videor esse cum tuās litterās legō, I seem to be in Rome when I read your letter.

459. When *cum*, meaning *when*, refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

The difference is the same as that between the relative clause of fact and the relative clause of characteristic.

This distinction, however, is not always followed strictly by Roman writers.

cō cum veniō, praetor quiescēbat, when I got there, the praetor was resting.

cum inambulārem in xystō, ad mē Brūtus venit, while I was walking in the portico, Brutus came to me.

Temporal Clauses with *postquam*, *ubi*, etc.

460. *Postquam*, *after*; *ubi*, *ut*, *when*; and *simul ac* (*simul atque*), *cum primum*, *as soon as*, referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs poposcit, after Caesar arrived, he demanded hostages.

simul atque intrōductus est, rem cōnfēcit, as soon as he was brought in, he finished the affair.

461.

VOCABULARY

animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, notice.

cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, learn, become acquainted with.

cum, when, conjunction.

ēiciō, ere, ēiēcī, ēiectus, thrust out; sē eicere, rush forth.

exeō, ire, ii, exitūrus, go out, go forth.

factiō, ōnis, f., faction.

gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice, delight in.

incendium, ī, n., fire, conflagration.

ōmen, inis, n., foreboding.

postquam, after, conjunction.

postrēmō, adv., *at last, in the end.*

quaerō, ere, **quaesivī**, **quaesitus**, *inquire, seek.*

simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*

subducō, ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *withdraw.*

EXERCISES

462. 1. Postquam milites id animadverterunt, e castris exierunt. 2. Cum omnia cognovit, se eicere voluit. 3. Simul ac omen malorum cognoverunt, pacem petiverunt. 4. Cum Caesar ad oppidum accederet, populus statim se subducebat. 5. Ubi dux e militibus quaesivit, incendii causam repperit. 6. Cum Caesar Romam venisset, duae factiones in Gallis factae sunt. 7. Caesar cum veniet, omnia cognoscet. 8. Postremō ut milites nostri ex castris se eiecerunt, hostes ex agris exibant. 9. Cum hoc dixisset, omnes gavisi sunt.

463. 1. After the soldiers crossed the river, they pitched camp. 2. When he learned everything, he went away. 3. As soon as the cavalry rush forth from the camp, the enemy withdraw into the forest. 4. All will rejoice greatly, when they notice these things. 5. When Caesar comes, he will seek the cause of the conflagration. 6. As soon as the women and children withdrew, they made the attack.

REVIEW

464. 1. Ea ipsa nocte hic captivus ad suos fugit. 2. Alius vos laudabit, alius culpabit. 3. Disciplinae maiorum meminerimus. 4. Quid igitur diceremus. 5. Utinam hanc aetatem in his operibus ne consumpsissemus. 6. Vestris legatis, milites, operam date. 7. Ne calamitates ploraveris. 8. Nonnulli remanebant ut suspicionem timoris vitarent. 9. Videamus quae pueri dicant. 10. Impetus statim facietur ne hostes fugiant.

Lesson 79

TEMPORAL CLAUSES, Continued

465. Clauses introduced by **dum**, **donec**, **quoad**, and **quam diū**.

Dum, **dōnec**, **quoad**, and **quam diū**, meaning *as long as, while*, take the indicative, usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

hostēs populi Rōmānī fuimus, quoad nostra arma nōs tūtārī poterant, *we were enemies of the Roman people, as long as our arms could protect us.*

Dum, meaning *as long as, while*, usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

Dum, donec, and quoad, meaning *until*, take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

donec rediit, mansimus, *we remained until he came.*

dum veniat ibi opperire, *you shall wait here until he comes.*

466.

VOCABULARY

adversarius, ii, m., *adversary.*

ago, ere, egi, actus, do.

anima, ae, f., *air, the breath of life.*

communiō, ire, ivi or ii, itus, *fortify strongly.*

conviva, ae, m., or f., *guest.*

donec, until.

dum, while, until, as long as.

itaque, and thus, therefore.

iucundus, a, um, adj., *agreeable, pleasant, delightful.*

magistratus, us, m., *magistrate.*

Massilia, ae, f., *Marseille.*

perficiō, ere, feci, fectus, *accomplish.*

silentium, ii, n., *silence.*

tamen, nevertheless, yet.

EXERCISES

467. 1. Dum Rōmānī haec perficiunt, Gallī adorti sunt. 2. Quoad nobīs anima erit, pugnābimus. 3. Itaque expectāvimus dum nūntiī a Cāesare pervenirent. 4. Dum lēgātum expectāmus, castra commūnimus. 5. In oppidō silentium erat, donec milites ex castris pervēnerunt. 6. Magistrātus ibi remānsit, dum exercitum vidit. 7. Dux Massiliae expectāvit dum navēs convenirent. 8. Silentium agāmus, donec omnia cognōscāmus.

468. 1. They will not go away, until they see the general. 2. While they were keeping silence, we were strongly fortifying the camp. 3. As long as there were two factions in the state, there was not peace. 4. He waited two days until you should come. 5. As long as our adversaries did not attack, we kept quiet. 6. Nevertheless let us withdraw before the enemy arrives.

Lesson 80

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES

469. A Substantive Clause is one which is used as a noun. As a noun it may be used in any case, although its use as either the subject or object of a verb is most common.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN INDICATIVE

470. *Quod*, meaning *that* or *the fact that*, introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

accidit perincommodē quod eum nūquam vīdistī, it happened very unfortunately that you did not see him anywhere.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH VERB IN SUBJUNCTIVE

471. Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning *to command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish*, etc. The connective is *ut* or *nē*.

petō quaesōque ut tuōs mēcum servēs, I ask and beg that you save your friends together with me.

472. Verbs of *hindering* are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by *nē, quīn, or quōminus*.

prohibuit quōminus in unum coīrēmus, he kept us from coming together.

impedior nē plūra dicam, I am prevented from saying more.

473. Expressions of *doubting* or *ignorance* with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by *quīn*. The most common expressions of this kind are, *nōn dubitō, nōn dubium est, quis dubitat, quis ignōrat*, etc.

quis ignōrat quīn tria Graecōrum genera sint? who does not know that there are three kinds of Greeks?

nōn dubitat quīn brevī sit Trōia peritūra, he does not doubt that Troy is soon to fall.

474.

VOCABULARY

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessurūs, grant.

dēcernō, ere, crēvī, crētus, decree, decide.

magnificentia, ae, f., grandeur, splendor, greatness.

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, obey.

permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, permit.

praecipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, enjoin.

quīn, but that.

quōminus, from (only with verbs of *hindering*).

reiciō, ere, reiēcī, reiectus, hurl back.

schola, ae, f., school.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, seek, follow.

transportō, āre, āvī, ātus, transport.

EXERCISES

475. 1. Quod milites mandatis non obtemperaverunt, mihi non placet. 2. Postulo ut haec omnia fiant. 3. Dux militibus praecēpit nē ullum omnino telum in hostes reicerent. 4. Non dubito quin pueri a scholā iam redierint. 5. Decretum est ut exercitus flumen transportāretur. 6. Omnēs prohibuit nē excederent. 7. Hostes prohibuit quōminus in unum coirent. 8. Nūntiō praecēpit ut Rōmam statim contenderet. 9. Nobis persuāsit ut Rōmae sex diēs maneremus. 10. Non dubito quin fuerit maximā virtūte.

476. 1. The general commanded the soldiers to take the town. 2. They did not doubt but that the Romans had already withdrawn. 3. You permitted the enemy to ravage the towns and fields. 4. The senate decreed that the war should be carried on. 5. The fleet of the enemy prevented us from transporting the grain. 6. I do not doubt but that the cavalry followed the enemy.

Lesson 81

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH SUBJUNCTIVE, Continued

477. Verbs meaning to wish and to desire are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**. The most common verbs of this kind are **optō, volō, and mālō**.

optō ut beātus sis, I want you to be happy.

478. Verbs meaning to fear (**timeō, metuō, vereor**) are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut**. Note carefully that after verbs of *fearing* **nē** means *that, lest*; and **ut** means *that not*.

timeō nē hōc faciat, I fear lest he does this (or will do this).

timeō ut hoc faciat, I fear that he will not do this.

479. Verbs meaning *to bring about, to accomplish*, take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non**. These are substantive clauses of result.

haec rēs commeātūs ut portārī possent efficiēbat, *this thing brought it about that provisions could be carried.*

Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut non** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

accidit ut omnēs Hermae dēicerentur, *it happened that all the Hermae were thrown down.*

vērūm nōn est; sequitur ut falsum sit, *it is not true; it follows that it is false.*

480.

VOCABULARY

clādēs, is, f., *destruction, defeat.*

ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth.*

lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy.*

lūdibrium, ī, n., *mockery, sport; habeō in ludibriō, deride, mock.*

optō, āre, āvī, ātus, *desire.*

plebs, is, f., *common people.*

praetereā, *besides.*

primō, first, *firstly.*

rescindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *tear down.*

sic, so, *in this way.*

tergum, ī, n., *back.*

vertō, ere, vertī, versus, turn; terga vertere, *flee.*

vinculum, ī, n., *bond, feller.*

EXERCISES

481. 1. Optō ut lēgatiō quam primum redeat. 2. Praetereā veritus sum nē Galli nōs in ludibriō habērent. 3. Gravitas periculi fecit ut celeriter terga verterēmus. 4. Sic eōdem diē accidit ut dux Rōmānus suōs ēdūceret. 5. Plebs optāvit nē tribūnis vincula essent. 6. Primō timui nē aedificium rescidissent. 7. Sic effecit ut populus clādem nōn cognōsceret. 8. Maximē optāmus nē magistrātūs ullas contrōversiās habeant. 9. Accidit ut eō diē in urbe nōn remanēret. 10. Vereor ut socii nostri impetum hostium sustineant.

482. 1. I desire that all return home. 2. It happened that resources were lacking. 3. They brought it about that the general was informed of everything. 4. I greatly fear that the allies will flee. 5. He feared that our men would not endure the attack of the enemy. 6. Thus it happened that the embassy returned to Rome within a few days. 7. They fear lest the enemy will this night cross the river.

Lesson 82

INDIRECT QUESTIONS

483. Indirect Questions take the Subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking, inquiring*, and the like.

Indirect questions may be introduced by,

(a) Interrogative Pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

rogō tē ubi fueris et quid feceris, *I ask you where you were and what you did.*

(b) The Particles **-ne, num**, without distinction of meaning. The Particle **nōnne** is used only after **quaerō**.

Pūblilius itūrusne sit et quandō ex Aledīo scīre poteris, *whether Publilius intends to go and when, you can learn from Aledius.*

quaerō ā tē nōnne oppressam rem pūblicam putēs, *I ask you whether you do not think the state is burdened.*

Note how the introductory particles of indirect questions differ from those of direct questions.

484.

VOCABULARY

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *pursue, overtake.*

dē tertiā vigiliā, *at about the third watch* (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).

dēnique, *adv., finally, at last.*

explōrātor, ōris, m., *scout.*

in animō habēō, mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*

inter sē dare, *to exchange, give each other.*

praemittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *send ahead, dispatch.*

spatium, ī, n., *space, time, opportunity.*

EXERCISES

485. 1. Gallis erat in animō iter per prōvinciam facere. 2. Cūr cohortēs ex castris ēdūcere vultis? 3. Caesar ab explōrātōribus rogāvit ubi essent hostēs. 4. Dux ab hostibus quaesivit nōnne in animō habērent obsidēs inter sē dare. 5. Ab captivis quaesivit quātae civitatēs in armis essent. 6. Rogāvimus num esset spatium. 7. Dēnique vidimus quid hostēs facerent. 8. Legātī Gallōrum nobis dixerunt quae sibi in animō essent. 9. Germāni ā duce Rōmānō rogāverunt cūr in suos finēs prōcessisset. 10. Germāni ā duce Rōmānō rogāverunt: "Cur in nostrōs finēs prōcessisti?"

486. 1. He asked whether the scouts returned to camp at about the third watch. 2. Caesar asked the envoys what they wished. 3. Do you know whether anyone is going to Rome? 4. When was the battle fought? 5. He asked when the battle was fought. 6. We soon found where the enemy was. 7. The Gauls dispatched envoys who should exchange hostages. 8. Let us ask the messenger what towns the enemy has captured.

Lesson 83

CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

487. A Conditional Sentence has two parts, the Protasis or condition, and the Apodosis or conclusion. The Protasis or condition is regularly introduced by *sī, if; nisi, unless; or sīn, but if*.

There are three kinds of conditions, used as follows:

488. SIMPLE CONDITIONS

Simple Conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfilment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

sī hōc facis, bene est, if you do this, it is well.

sī hōc facies, bene erit, if you do this (lit., if you will do this) it will be well. (Sometimes called future more vivid.)

sī hōc fēcistī, bene fuit, if you did this, it was well.

489. CONDITIONS OF POSSIBILITY

The Condition of Possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries *should* and *would* respectively.

sī deus tē interroget, quid respondeās? if a god should ask you, what would you answer?

sī hōc faciās, bene sit, if you should do this, it would be well.

490. CONDITIONS CONTRARY TO FACT

Conditions Contrary to Fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

sī hōc facerēs, benē esset, if you did this, it would be well.

sī amicus meus adesset, gaudērem, if my friend were present, I would rejoice.

sī hōc fecisses, bene fuisset, if you had done this, it would have been well.

nisi tū amisissēs, numquam recēpissēm, unless you had lost it, I would never have found it.

491.

VOCABULARY

adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival.*

aeternus, a, um, *everlasting, eternal.*

apud, prep. with acc., *among, with.*

autem, conj. (never first in a sentence), *but, however.*

honor, ōris, m., *honor.*

immortālis, e, *immortal.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*

inde, adv., *thence, thereupon.*

mandō, āre, āvi, ātus, *assign.*

nisi, unless.

opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, *overwhelm.*

pateō, ēre, patuī, *lie open.*

provideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care.*

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *avail, prevail.*

vīs (vis), f., *violence; pl., vīrēs, ium,* *strength.*

EXERCISES

492. 1. Si post mortem est vita aeterna, mors nōn est timenda. 2. Si equitēs statim cōsequentur, magnum hostiūm numerum occīdent. 3. Si amici nostri Rōmae sunt, laeti sumus. 4. Helvētī flūmen Rhodanum trāsiissent, nisi dux Rōmānus in Galliā contendisset. 5. Rēs publica oppressa esset, nisi cōsul valuisset. 6. Si via patēret, Galli in prōvinciā iter facerent. 7. Si hostibus vīrēs sint, oppugnent. 8. Si haec mihi mandārēs, laetus essem. 9. Si autem ē castris discesseris, ab hostibus interficiēris. 10. Plūrēs Gallōrum occisi essent, si nostri celerius cōsecuti essent.

493. 1. If you should go to Athens, you would see many beautiful buildings. 2. If we return to Rome, we will be happy. 3. If the soul is immortal, death is not to be feared. 4. If my authority had not been uncertain, I would have received more honor. 5. If a general commands, the soldier obeys. 6. If the soldiers are brave, there is always hope of victory. 7. If the leader fortifies the town well, no one will be afraid. 8. If he were brave, he would talk less.

Lesson 84

INDIRECT DISCOURSE (Orātiō Obliqua).

494. The words or thoughts of a person may be given directly (direct discourse), just as he spoke or thought, or they may be given indirectly (indirect discourse), in the words of some one else.

495. When given indirectly, the words or thoughts of a person depend or are the object of some verb of *saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving*, etc.

Thus we have Direct Discourse in, *Caesar said, "The die is cast"*; but Indirect Discourse in, *Caesar said that the die was cast*.

496. In Latin, declarative sentences in Indirect Discourse change their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

DIRECT DISCOURSE

sī iterum experīri volunt, parātus sum dēcertāre, if they wish to try again, I am ready to fight it out.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE

Ariovistus respondit, sī iterum experīri velint, sē parātum esse dēcertāre, Ariovistus replied that if they wished to try again, he was ready to fight it out.

TENSES OF INFINITIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

497. Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

(a) The present infinitive denotes the same time as that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrāre, he says that he is working.

dixit sē labōrāre, he said that he was working.

(b) The perfect infinitive denotes time previous to that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrāvisse, he says that he has worked.

dixit sē labōrāvisse, he said that he had worked.

(c) The future infinitive denotes time after that of the verb on which it depends.

dīcit sē labōrātūrum esse, he says that he will work.

dixit sē labōrātūrum esse, he said that he would work.

TENSES OF SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

498. The tenses of the subjunctive in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse follow the regular principles of Sequence of Tenses.

dicunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuerint, *they say that they saw the ambassadors who were present.*

dixerunt sē lēgātōs vidēre, quī adfuissent, *they said that they saw the ambassadors who had been present.*

499.

VOCABULARY

adveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *arrive.*

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, *consider.*

audiō, ire, ivī, itus, *hear.*

Diviciācus, ī, m., *Diviciacus*, a powerful Haeduan.

ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reveal, disclose.*

incolō, ere, uī, cultus, *inhabit.*

inferior, ius, *inferior.*

infirmus, a, um, *weak.*

modo, *just, just now.*

neque (nec), *nor.*

pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus, *rout, defeat.*

renūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring back word, report.*

EXERCISES

500. 1. Dicunt Dumnorīgem esse summā audāciā. 2. Dicit sē scire illa esse vērā. 3. Existimāsne hās legiōnēs, quae modo advēnerint, infirmās esse? 4. Renūntiāverunt maximās nātiōnēs a Caesare pulsās esse. 5. Dixit milītēs quōs sēcum habuisset fortissimōs fuisse. 6. Caesar dicit suōs flūmen, quod altissimum sit, trānsire nōn posse. 7. Num putāvistis eōs quī fortēs essent discessūrōs esse? 8. Arbitror nūntium, quī a Caesare missus sit, ab hostibus tenērī. 9. Nēmō putāvit eōs, quī hōc oppidum incoluissent, discessisse. 10. Diviciācus Caesarī dixit sē velle dē his rēbus cum eō agere.

501. 1. He says that this is the river which the Gauls crossed. 2. I think that our men are holding inferior positions. 3. He announced that the enemy had been routed. 4. I hear that the town which the Gauls inhabit is being fortified. 5. He says that the man whom we see is his friend. 6. He said that the man whom we saw was his friend. 7. It was reported that the general would fortify the hill which he had seized.

Lesson 85

THE INFINITIVE

502. The infinitive is used as the subject of **est** and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

longum est ea dicere, *the telling of these things is a long story.*

eōs hōc nōmine appellārī fās est, *it is right that they be called by this name.*

503. The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as Complementary Infinitives. The most common verbs which take this infinitive are **volō**, **mālō**, **nōlō**; **debeō**, *ought*; **audeō**, *dare*; and **statuō**, *decide*.

bellum cum Germānīs gerere constituit, *he decided to wage war with the Germans.*

504. The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs;

(a) Verbs meaning to *say, think, know, perceive*. This is the regular construction of principal clauses in indirect discourse. See previous lesson.

(b) Verbs meaning to *order, compel, forbid, permit, or teach*. The verbs **iubeō**, *I order*, and **vetō**, *I forbid*, are very common.

tertiam aciem castra mūnīre iussit, *he ordered the men of the third line to fortify the camp.*

505.

VOCABULARY

comparō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *get ready.*

cōnstat, **stāre**, **stitit**, *it is evident.*

cōnsuēscō, **ere**, **suēvī**, **suētum**, *become accustomed.*

dispōnō, **ere**, **posuī**, **positus**, *distribute.*

iubeō, **ēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order.*

nancīscor, **ī**, **nactus sum**, *procure.*

necesse est, *it is necessary.*

opus est, *it is necessary.*

praestat, *it is better.*

statuō, **ere**, **uī**, **ūtus**, *decide.*

studeō, **ēre**, **uī**, ———, *be eager for (with dative); novīs rēbus studēre*, *to be eager for a revolution.*

EXERCISES

506. 1. Laudāri est grātum. 2. Incolās ē oppidō exte iussit. 3. Opus est copiam frūmentī ad castra mitti. 4. Caesar lēgātum auxilium mittere iussit. 5. Cōstat magnum numerum barbarōrum ad oppidum vēnisse. 6. Dux plūres milites nancisci statuit. 7. Galli agrōs vāstare consuevērunt. 8. Cōsul nūntium cum decem equitibus in Galliam contendere iubēbit. 9. Necesse est impedimenta comparāre. 10. Illi milites ex hibernis ēgredi nōn ausi sunt. 11. Cōsules praesidia disponere statuērunt. 12. Officium est militum prō patriā fortiter pugnāre et moriri.

507. 1. I decided to get the troops ready. 2. To be brave in battle is the duty of every one. 3. It is better to procure more aid. 4. He ordered us to summon the messengers. 5. It is necessary to fortify the camp with a wall. 6. It is evident that many soldiers arrived in the night. 7. It was easy to capture the town. 8. The general had decided to storm the town on the march.

Lesson 86

PARTICIPLES

508. Participles are verbal adjectives. As adjectives, they modify nouns and agree with them in gender, number, and case. As verbs, they have voice and tense, and govern cases.

TENSE OF PARTICIPLES

509. A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

The present participle denotes an action as going on at the time of the action of the verb.

pugnāns occīditur, *he is killed while fighting.*

audiēbam tē loquentem, *I heard you speaking.*

The perfect participle shows an action already completed at the time of the action of the verb.

auditus, sedēō, *having been heard, I sit down.*

auditus sēdī, *having been heard, I sat down.*

auditus sedēbō, *having been heard, I will sit down.*

USE OF PARTICIPLES

Participles are often equivalent to an English subordinate clause, expressing a variety of relations, such as time, cause, means, manner, condition, etc.

longius prōsequi veritus, ad Cicerōnem pervēnit, *because he feared to follow further, he came to Cicero.* (Cause.)

flentēs implōrābant, *they begged with tears.* (Manner).

mente ūti nōn possumus, cibō et pōtiōne complēti, *if filled with food and drink, we cannot use our mind.* (Condition.)

The perfect participle often expresses an idea which in English would be put in a coordinate clause.

multōs vicōs captōs incendit, *he captured and burned many villages* (lit., *he burned many villages captured*).

510.

VOCABULARY

cernō, ere, —, —, perceive.

circum, prep. with acc., around.

cōspiciō, ere, spexi, spectus, see.

diligentia, ae, f., diligence, carefulness, industry.

exior, iri, pertus sum, try, test.

interimō, ere, emi, emptus, destroy, kill.

latus, eris, n., side, flank.

mūrus, i, m., wall.

oculus, i, m., eye.

permovē, ēre, mōvi, mōtus, influence, arouse.

persequor, i, secutus sum, follow up.

submittō, ere, misi, missus, send, despatch.

tueor, ēri, —, —, guard, watch.

EXERCISES

511. 1. Vidēbam eum id agentem. 2. Militēs missōs nōn culpavit. 3. Caesar cōsul factus in Galliam contendit. 4. Galli hīs rēbus permōti obsidēs miserunt. 5. Multōs hostium captōs interēmit. 6. Nostri hostēs circum mūrum prōgredientēs cernunt. 7. Diligentiam vestram saepe expertus, vōs nunc ad turrim tuendam vocō. 8. Hostēs latera adorientēs vidimus. 9. Dux hostēs pulsōs persequetur. 10. Socii, quōs implōrantēs cōspexit, subsidium submisit.

512. 1. (Since) the captive (had been) condemned (he) was killed. 2. (Though) wounded, he fought for a long time. 3. Our men were killed (while) fighting bravely. 4. When he had been informed of this, he hastened to Rome. 5. The general captured (participle) the town and fortified it. 6. The leaders of the Gauls (who were) captured will be sent to Rome.

Lesson 87

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE

513. The Gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the constructions of the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases. In form, it is the neuter singular of the future passive participle.

ars vivendī, *the art of living.*

studiosus tē audiendī, *desirous of hearing you.*

mēns discendō alitur, *the mind is nourished by learning.*

514. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies. In form, it is the singular and plural of all genders of the future passive participle.

initia sunt cōsilia urbis dēlendae, *plans have been formed for destroying the city.*

diēs rogātiōnī ferendae, *the day for proposing the measure.*

515. Either the gerund or gerundive construction may usually be used to express the same idea.

cupidus poetam audiendī, *desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerund).

cupidus poetae audiendī, *desirous of hearing the poet* (Gerundive).

dēlector ōrātōrēs legendō, *I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerund).

dēlector ōrātōribus legendīs, *I am delighted with reading the orators* (Gerundive).

THE SUPINE

516. The Supine in **-um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose, and it may take any construction that the verb from which it is derived may.

lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxilium, *they send envoys to ask for help.*

nōn Grāis servitum mātribus ibō, *I shall not go to be a slave to the Greek matrons.*

517. The Supine in **-ū** is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes a dependent case.

terribilēs visū formae, *figures terrible to see.*

mīrābile dictū, *wonderful to tell.*

518.

VOCABULARY

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform.*

aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable.*

causā, abl., *for the sake of*; always preceded by the genitive.

cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, *encourage, exhort.*

cōnsector, ārī, ātus sum, *follow up.*

dēmōnstrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, mention.*

effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape.*

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *examine.*

praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*

signa inferō, charge (literally, *bear the standards against*).

tūtus, a, um, *safe.*

versor, ārī, ātus sum, *he engaged in.*

EXERCISES

519. 1. Legātus finem loquendi fēcit. 2. Legātī ad pācem petendam vēnērunt. 3. Gallī dē bellō Rōmānis inferendō cōnsilia faciēbant. 4. Tempus hostibus ad signa inferenda aliēnum fuit. 5. In castris mūniendīs versābatur. 6. Effugiendī causā omnia faciēbat. 7. Principēs Gallōrum ad Caesarem vēnērunt auxilium petitum. 8. Haec res est difficilis dēmōnstrātū. 9. Ad multam noctem in hīs rēbus administrandīs versābatur. 10. Quaerunt quid optimum factū sit. 11. De hostibus cōnsectandīs colloquāmur.

520. 1. This is easier to say than to do. 2. The ambassadors were sent to Rome to seek peace. 3. For many days he was engaged in following up the enemy. 4. For the sake of examining the enemy's position he sent out very many scouts. 5. This place was unfavorable for fighting. 6. Many kings are desirous of carrying on wars.

REVIEW

521. 1. In castris silentium erat, donec Caesar Rōmā pervēnit. 2. Cōsulēs exspectāverunt dum nāvēs convenirent. 3. Postulāvit ut milītēs mandatīs suis obtemperārent. 4. Hostēs prohibuērunt nē Rōmam statim contenderēmus. 5. Cōsulēs effecērunt ut socii clādem nōn cognōscerent. 6. Veritus sum nē omnia āmitterēmus. 7. Nōs rogāvit quid fecissēmus. 8. Si ā castellō discessissēs, ab hostibus interfectus essēs. 9. Caesar arbitrābatur hās civitatēs sibi amicās futurās esse. 10. Belli inferendī causā in prōvinciam trāsiit.

PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX

1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative case.
2. A noun used with and explaining another noun, denoting the same person or thing, is called an appositive, and is said to be in apposition.
3. An appositive agrees with its noun or pronoun in case, and, if possible, in number and gender.
4. A noun connected with the subject by some form of the verb **sum** or other intransitive verb is called a predicate noun.
5. A predicate noun agrees in case and, whenever possible, in number and gender, with the noun which it modifies.
6. The vocative case is the case of address, and is the same as the nominative except in the second declension, when it usually ends in **-e**.
7. The genitive of possession is used to denote ownership.
8. The subjective genitive denotes the person who does the act indicated by the noun on which it depends.
9. The objective genitive denotes the object of an action implied in a noun or an adjective.
10. The genitive of the whole denotes the whole from which a part is taken.
11. The appositional genitive is used to define a word of general meaning.
12. The genitive of quality is used with a noun to denote a quality of that noun.
13. The genitive of specification is used with a few nouns and many adjectives to denote that with reference to which a quality exists.
14. Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* take a genitive of the charge.
15. With **interest** the person or thing concerned is denoted by the genitive. If, however, the person concerned is expressed in English by a pronoun, the Latin uses the ablative singular feminine of the corresponding possessive adjective.
16. The genitive is sometimes used with verbs and adjectives, meaning *plenty* or *want*.
17. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, when they mean to *be mindful of*; **memini**, meaning to *mention*, and **obliscor**, meaning to *be unmindful of*, take the genitive.
18. **Memini** and **reminiscor**, meaning literally to *remember*, to *retain in mind*, and **obliscor**, meaning literally to *forget*, take the accusative.
19. The impersonal verbs **miseret**, **paenitet**, **piget**, **pudet**, and

taedet take the accusative of the person affected, and the genitive of the cause of the feeling.

20. Transitive verbs take the accusative of the direct object, and the dative of the indirect object.

21. Many intransitive verbs take the dative especially those signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade*, and the like.

22. The dative of the indirect object is used with many verbs compounded with **ad, ante, circum, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, sub, and super**.

23. The dative of reference is used to denote the person to whom a statement refers or of whom it is true, or to whom it is of interest.

24. The dative is used with forms of **sum** to denote the possessor.

25. The dative is used with the gerundive to express the agent.

26. The dative is often used to express the purpose or tendency of an action. This is often used with another dative (Reference), denoting the person concerned.

27. The dative is used with adjectives denoting *friendliness, hostility, likeness, unlikeness, equality, nearness, relation, fitness*, etc.

28. The direct object of a verb is in the accusative case.

29. The accusative is used in exclamations.

30. Verbs meaning to *make, choose, call, show*, etc., may take two accusatives, one of the direct object, the other of the predicate accusative.

31. A predicate accusative may be an adjective as well as a noun.

32. Some verbs meaning to *ask, demand, teach, conceal*, etc., take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing.

33. Verbs compounded with **circum** or **trans** may take two accusatives, one depending on the verb, the other on the preposition.

34. The limit of motion is expressed by the accusative with a preposition.

35. With names of towns, small islands, **domus**, and **rūs** the preposition is regularly omitted.

36. Extent of time or space is regularly expressed by the accusative.

37. Verbs or adjectives denoting separation take the ablative with or without a preposition. The preposition is usually omitted with words of *freeing, depriving, and lacking*.

38. The personal agent with a passive verb is expressed by the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

39. The comparative adjectives are regularly followed by **quam** and a substantive in the same case.

40. The ablative is used to denote cause. The ablative of cause is sometimes used with a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

41. Accompaniment is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **cum**.

42. The ablative is used to denote the manner in which an act is performed. If the noun is unaccompanied by an adjective, the preposition **cum** is also used.

43. The ablative of a noun modified by an adjective is used to denote a quality. This construction may be used attributively or predicatively.

44. The ablative is used to denote the means or instrument by which an act is done.

45. The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, **fruor**, **fungor**, **potior**, and **vescor**.

46. The expressions **opus est** and **ūsus est** take the ablative.

47. Verbs meaning to *fill* and adjectives meaning *full* take the ablative.

48. Two words in the ablative, usually a noun or pronoun and a participle, are often used in a loose connection with a sentence to express any one of a number of ideas, such as *time*, *cause*, *manner*, *condition*, *concession*, etc.

49. The ablative is used with verbs of *buying* and *selling* to denote the price.

50. The ablative is used with comparatives and words implying comparison to show the degree of difference.

51. The ablative of specification is used to denote that in respect to which something is or is not true.

52. The ablative of specification is used with **dignus** and **indignus**.

53. The place where a thing is or is done is usually expressed by the ablative with **in**.

54. Names of towns, however, except singulars of the first and second declensions take the ablative without a preposition.

55. Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with the preposition **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

56. Names of towns, however, **domus** and **rūs**, use the ablative without a preposition.

57. The time when or within which anything takes place is expressed by the ablative.

58. The locative case denotes place where. It occurs regularly in the singular names of towns and small islands of the first and second declensions, and also in a few special words, like **domī**, **humī**, **bellī**, **militiae**, and **rūrī**.

59. The subjunctive is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē**.

60. The subjunctive is used in questions of a purely rhetorical nature, implying the impossibility of the thing mentioned and expecting no answer. The negative is **nōn**.

61. The optative subjunctive is used to express a wish. The negative is **nē**.

62. The potential subjunctive is used to express ideas set forth by English *may*, *should*, or *would*. The negative is **nōn**.

63. Affirmative commands or requests are expressed by the imperative.

64. Negative commands or prohibition may be expressed by **nōlī**, or **nōlīte** with the infinitive, by **cavē** or **cavēte** (**nē**) with the present subjunctive, or by the perfect subjunctive with **nē**.

65. According to the rules of tense sequence, the principal tenses of the indicative are followed by the principal tenses of the subjunctive; the historical by the historical.

66. Purpose is usually expressed by a subjunctive clause introduced by **ut** if affirmative, by **nē** if negative.

67. The subjunctive is used in relative clauses to express purpose.

68. When a purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, it is always introduced by **quōd**.

69. When the antecedent of a relative pronoun is indefinite, and the clause expresses some quality or characteristic of it, the subjunctive is used.

70. Causal clauses take the indicative if the reason is given on the authority of the writer or speaker himself; the subjunctive if given on the authority of some one else.

71. **Cum** meaning *since* takes the subjunctive.

72. Result is regularly expressed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut**. The negative is **nōn**.

73. Clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

74. **Cum** meaning *when* takes the indicative if the clause refers to present or future time.

75. When **cum**, meaning *when*, refers to past time, the indicative is used when the time is merely defined; but the subjunctive is used when some circumstance connected with it is stated.

76. **Postquam**, *after*; **ubi**, *ut*, *when*; and **simul ac** (**simul atque**), **cum primum**, *as soon as*, referring to a past occurrence, take the indicative, usually the perfect.

77. **Dum**, **dōnec**, **quoad**, and **quamdiū**, meaning *as long as*, *while*, take the indicative; usually the same tense as that of the main verb.

78. **Dum**, meaning *as long as, while*, usually takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the main verb.

79. **Dum**, **dōnec**, and **quoad**, meaning *until*, take the subjunctive when referring to time after that of the main verb, but the indicative when referring to time before that of the main verb.

80. **Quod**, meaning *that* or *the fact that*, introduces the only common substantive clause with the verb in the indicative.

81. Clauses with the subjunctive are used as objects of verbs meaning *to command, induce, advise, ask, allow, decide, strive, accomplish*, etc. . The connective is **ut** or **nē**.

82. Verbs of hindering are followed by the subjunctive in a substantive clause introduced by **nē**, **quīn**, or **quōminus**.

83. Expressions of doubting or ignorance with a negative expressed or implied take a substantive clause with the subjunctive introduced by **quīn**.

84. Verbs meaning *to wish* and *to desire* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **nē**.

85. Verbs meaning *to fear* are followed by the subjunctive introduced by **nē** or **ut**. Remember that after verbs of fearing **nē** means *that, lest*; and **ut** means *that not*.

86. Verbs meaning *to bring about*, *to accomplish* take the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn**.

87. Clauses with the subjunctive introduced by **ut** or **ut nōn** are often used as the subject of impersonal verbs.

88. Indirect questions take the subjunctive, and depend on verbs of *asking, inquiring*, and the like.

89. A conditional sentence has two parts, the protasis or condition, and the apodosis or conclusion. The protasis or condition is regularly introduced by **sī, if; nisi, unless; or sīn, but if**.

90. Simple conditions merely state a case, and imply nothing as to its reality or fulfillment. They may be in present, past, or future time, and have in each case the proper tense of the indicative.

91. The condition of possibility states a case as being possible in some future time. The verbs in both parts of the sentence are in the subjunctive and are usually translated with the auxiliaries *should* and *would* respectively.

92. Conditions contrary to fact state situations which do not exist. The subjunctive is used in both clauses, the imperfect for a contrary to fact condition in present time, the pluperfect for a contrary to fact condition in past time.

93. Declarative sentences on being put into indirect discourse change

their main clause to the infinitive with a subject accusative, and all subordinate clauses take the subjunctive.

94. Tenses of the infinitive in indirect discourse denote time not by themselves, but with reference to the verb on which they depend.

95. The infinitive is used as the subject of *est* and various impersonal verbs. When so used, the infinitive may have a subject accusative and may take a predicate noun or adjective.

96. The infinitive without the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs, to complete their meaning. These are known as complementary infinitives.

97. The infinitive with the subject accusative is used as the object of many verbs.

98. A participle denotes time with reference to that of the verb in its own clause.

99. The gerund is a verbal noun. As a verb it governs cases, and as a noun it itself may be used in the various constructions of each case.

100. The gerund is a verbal adjective. As a verb it governs cases, and as an adjective it agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies.

101. The supine in *-um* is used with verbs of motion to express purpose.

102. The supine in *-ū* is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification.

PART III
LATIN FOR TRANSLATION

Latin Prayers

THE SIGN OF THE CROSS

1. In nōmine Patris, et Filii, et Spīritūs Sanctī. Amen.

THE LORD'S PRAYER

2. (See Introduction).

THE ANGELICAL SALUTATION

3. Ave Mariā, grātia plena; Dominus tecum; benedicta tū in mulieribus, et benedictus fructus ventris tui, Iesus. Sancta Mariā, Māter Dei, ora pro nobis peccātoribus, nunc et in hōrā mortis nostrae. Amen.

THE APOSTLES' CREED

4. Credō in Deum, Patrem omnipotentem, Creatōrem caeli et terrae. Et in Iēsum Christum, Filium eius unicū, Dominum nostrum; qui conceptus est de Spīritū Sanctō, nātus ex Mariā Virgine, passus sub Pontio Pilātō, crucifixus, mortuus, et sepultus; descendit ad inferōs; tertiā diē resurrexit a mortuis; ascendit ad caelōs, sedet ad dextram Dei Patris omnipotentis; inde ventūrus est iudicāre vivōs et mortuōs. Credō in Spīritum Sanctum, sanctam Ecclesiam Catholicam, Sanctōrum communionem, remissionem peccātorum, carnis resurrectionem, vitam aeternam. Amen.

GLORIA PATRI

5. Glōria Patri, et Filio, et Spīritui Sanctō. Sicut erat in principiō, et nunc, et semper, et in saecula saeculōrum. Amen.

THE CONFITEOR

6. Confiteor Deō omnipotentī, beātae Mariae semper virginī, beātō Michaeli archangelō, beātō Ioanni Baptistae, sanctīs apostolis Petrō et Paulō, et omnibus sanctīs, quia peccāvi nimis, cōgitatione, verbō, et opere, meā culpā, meā culpā, meā maximā culpā. Ideo precor beātam Mariām semper virginem, beātum Michaelem archangelum, beātum Ioannem Baptistam, sanctōs apostolōs Petrum et Paulum, et omnēs sanctōs, orāre pro me ad Dominum Deum nostrum.

Misereātur mei omnipotens Deus, et dimissis peccātis meis, perducāt me ad vitam aeternam. Amen.

Indulgentiam, absolutionem, et remissionem peccātorum meōrum, tribuat mihi omnipotens et misericors Dominus. Amen.

7. SALVĒ REGĪNA

Salvē, Regīna, Māter misericordiae;
 Vita, dulcēdo, et spēs nostra, salvē.
 Ad tē clamāmus, exulēs filii Hevae;
 Ad tē suspīramus, gementēs et flentēs in hāc lacrymārum valle.
 Eia ergō, Advocāta nostra,
 Illōs tuōs misericordēs oculōs ad nōs converte;
 Et Iēsum, benedictum fructum ventris tui,
 Nōbīs post hōc exilium ostende.
 O clemens, O pia, O dulcis Virgo Mariā.

V. Orā prō nōbīs, sancta Dei Genitrix,
 R. Ut digni efficiāmur prōmissiōnibus Christi.

MEMORĀRE

8. Memorāre, O piissima Virgo Mariā, nōn esse auditum ā saeculō, quemquam ad tua currentem praesidia, tua implōrantem auxilia, tua petentem suffrāgia, esse dērelictum. Ego, tāli animātus confidentia, ad tē, Virgo Virginum, Māter, currō; ad te veniō, cōram tē gemēns peccātor assistō. Nōli, Māter Verbi, verba mea dēspicere, sed audi propitia et exaudi. Amen.

ORĒMUS

9. Grātiā tuā, quaesumus, Domine, mentibus nostris infunde; ut quī, angelō nuntiante, Christi filii tui incarnātiōnem cognōvimus, per passiōnem eius et crucem ad resurrectiōnis glōriā perdūcāmur; per eundem Christum Dominum nostrum. Amen.

Latin Hymns

10. TANTUM ERGŌ

Tantum ergō Sacramentum	Genitōri, Genitōque
Venerēmur cernui:	Laus et iubilātiō,
Et antiquum documentum	Salūs, honor, virtūs quōque
Novō cēdat ritui:	Sit et benedictiō:
Praestet fidēs supplēmentum	Prōcēdenti ab utrōque
Sensuum defectui.	Compar sit laudātiō.

11. DĒ NATIVITĀTE DOMINĪ¹

Puer nātus in Bethlehem,	Dē mātē nātus Virgine
Unde gaudet Ierusalem.	Sine virilī sēmine;
Hic iacet in praesēpiō,	Sine serpentis vulnere
Qui regnat sine terminō.	Dē nostrō vēnit sanguine;
Cognōvit bōs et asinus	In carne nōbīs similis,
Quod puer erat Dominus.	Peccātō sed dissimilis;
Rēgēs dē Saba veniunt	Ut redderet nōs hominēs
Aurum, tās, myrrham offerunt.	Deō et sibi similes.
Intrantēs domum invicem	In hōc nātālī gaudeō
Novum salūtant Principem.	Benedicāmus Dominō.

Laudētur sancta Trinitas,
Deō dicāmus grātias.

12. DĒ RESURRECTIŌNE DOMINĪ²

Pōne luctum, Magdalēna,
Et serēnā lacrimās;
Nōn est iam Simōnis coena,
Nōn cūr fletum exprimās;
Causae mille sunt laetāndi,
Causae mille exultāndi:

Alleluia resonet.

Sūme risum, Magdalēna,	Tolle vultum, Magdalēna,
Frons nitescat lūcida;	Redivivum obstupe;
Dēmigrāvit omnis poena,	Vidē frons quam sit amoena,
Lux coruscat fulgida;	Quinque plagās aspice;
Christus mundum liberāvit,	Fulgent sicut margaritae,
Et dē morte triumphāvit:	Ornāmenta novae vitae:
Alleluia resonet.	Alleluia resonet.
Gaude, plaude, Magdalēna,	Vive, vive, Magdalēna,
Tumbā Christus exiit,	Tua lux reversa est,
Tristis est peracta scēna,	Gaudiis turgescat vēna,
Victor mortis rediit;	Mortis vis abstersa est;
Quem deflēbas morientem,	Moesti procul sunt dolōrēs,
Nunc arridē resurgentem:	Laeti redeant amōrēs:
Alleluia resonet.	Alleluia resonet.

¹ This poem was written by Henricus Pistor, a theologian who lived in Paris at the end of the fourteenth and the beginning of the fifteenth centuries.

² Written by Peter the Venerable, who in 1122 was elected Abbot of Clugny in Burgundy.

13. IN PASSIÖNE DOMINI¹

Quam despectus, quam deiectus,	Cuius oculi beati
Rex caelorum est effectus,	Sunt in cruce obscurati,
Ut salvaret saeculum;	Et vultus expalluit:
Esurivit et sitivit,	Suo corpori tunc nudo
Pauper et egenus ivit	Non remansit pulchritudo,
Usque ad patibulum.	Decor omnis aufugit.
Recordare paupertatis,	Qui haec audis, ingemisce,
Et extremae vilitatis,	Et in istis planctum misce,
Et gravis supplicii.	Et cordis moestitias:
Si es compos rationis,	Corpus ange, corde plange,
Esto memor passionis,	Mentem frange, manu tange
Fellis et absinthii.	Christi mortis saevitas.
Cum deductus est immensus,	Virum respice dolorum,
Et in cruce tunc suspensus,	Et novissimum virorum,
Fugerunt discipuli.	Fortem ad supplicia.
Manus, pedes perfoderunt,	Tibi gratum sit et aequum
Et acetum potaverunt	Iam in cruce mori secum,
Summum Regem saeculi;	Compati convicia.

Crucifixe, fac me fortem,
 Ut libenter tuam mortem
 Plangam, donec vixerō.
 Tecum volo vulnerari,
 Te libenter amplexari
 In cruce desidero.

14. DE CRUCE DOMINI

Crux ave benedicta!	O sacrosanctum lignum!
Per te mors est devicta,	Tu vitae nostrae signum,
In te pendit Deus,	Tulisti fructum Iesum
Rex et Salvator meus.	Humani cordis esum
Tu arborum regina,	Dum crucis inimicos,
Salutis medicina,	Vocabis, et amicos,
Pressorum est levamen,	O Iesu, Fili Dei,
Et tristium solamen.	Sis, oro, memor mei.

¹ Written by St. Bonaventure, a member of the Franciscan Order and a famous theologian of the thirteenth century.

15.

DE NOVISSIMŌ IUDICIŌ¹

Diēs irae, diēs illa
Solvēt saeculum in favilla,
Teste David cum Sibylla.

Quantus tremor est futūrus,
Quandō Iudex est ventūrus,
Cuncta stricte discussūrus.

Tuba mīrum spārgēns sonum
Per sepulchra regiōnum
Cōget omnēs ante thronum.

Mors stupēbit et nātūra,
Quum resurget creatūra,
Iudicanti rēponsūra.

Liber scriptus prōferētur,
In quō tōtum continētur,
De quō mundus iudicētur.

Iuste Iudex ultionis,
Dōnum fac remissionis
Ante diem ratiōnis.

Ingemiscō tanquam reus,
Culpā rubet vultus meus:
Supplicantī parce, Deus.

Qui Mariam absolvisti,
Et latrōnem exaudisti,
Mihi quoque spem dedisti.

Iudex ergō quum sedēbit,
Quidquid latet, apparebit,
Nil inultum remanēbit.

Quid sum miser tum dictūrus,
Quem patrōnum rogatūrus,
Quum vix iustus sit sēcūrus?

Rex tremendae maiestātis,
Qui salvāndōs salvās grātis,
Salvā mē, fons pietātis.

Recordāre, Iēsu pie,
Quod sum causa tuae viae:
Nē mē perdās illa diē!

Quaerēns mē sedisti lassus,
Redēmisti crucem passus:
Tantus labor nōn sit cassus.

Precēs meae nōn sunt dignae,
Sed tū bonus fac benigne
Nē perenni cremer igne

Inter ovēs locum praestā,
Et ab haedīs mē sequestrā,
Statuēns in parte dextrā.

Confutātis maledictis,
Flammis acribus addictis,
Vocā mē cum benedictis.

Ōrō supplex et acclīnis
Cor contritum quasi cinis:
Gere cūram mei finis.

¹ Written by Thomas of Celano, a scholar and friend of St. Francis of Assisi, and one of the earliest members of the order founded by him in 1208.

Selections from Nepos¹

HANNIBAL

His greatness as a general, and his hatred of the Romans

16. Hannibal, Hamilcaris fīlius, Karthaginiēnsis. Si vērū est, quod nēmō dubitat, ut populus Rōmānus omnes gentēs virtūte superārit, nōn est infitiandum² Hannibalem tantō praestitis cēterōs imperātōrēs prūdentiā, quantō populus Rōmānus antecēdat fortitudīne cūctās nātiōnēs. Nam quotiēscumque³ cum eō⁴ congressus est in Ītaliā, semper discessit superior. Quod⁵ nisi domi civium suōrum invidia debilitātus⁶ esset, Rōmānōs vidētur superāre potuisse.⁷ Sed multōrum obtrēctātiō⁸ devicit ānīus virtūtem.

Hic autem velut⁹ hereditate relictum odium¹⁰ paternum¹¹ erga¹² Rōmānōs sic cōservāvit, ut prius animam quam id¹³ deposuerit; qui quidem, cum patriā pulsus esset et aliēnārū opum indigēret,¹⁴ numquam dēstiterit animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs.

¹ Born in town of Ticinum (Pavia) in Northern Italy, about B. C. 100. Died about B. C. 24. An essayist rather than a historian.

² Infītiōr, arī, ātus, sum, *deny*.

³ quotiēscumque, *as often as*.

⁴ eō, i. e., populō Rōmānō.

⁵ Quod nisi, *unless then*.

⁶ debilitō, are, avi, ātus, *weaken*.

⁷ *would have been able*.

⁸ obtrēctātiō, ōnis, f., *jealousy*.

⁹ velut hereditate, *by inheritance as it were*.

¹⁰ odium, i, n., *hatred, grudge*.

¹¹ paternus, a, um, *of a father; here his father's*.

¹² ergā, *towards*.

¹³ id, i. e., odium.

¹⁴ indigēret, *needed*.

Hannibal's Vow

17. Nam ut¹ omittam Philippum, quem absens hostem reddidit Rōmānis, omnium iis temporibus potentissimus rex Antiochus fuit. Hunc tantā cupiditate incendit² bellandi, ut usque a rubrō³ mari arma cōnatus sit inferre Italiae. Ad quem cum lēgātī venissent Rōmānī, qui dē eius voluntate explorarent darentque⁴ operam cōsiliis clandestinis⁵ ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgi⁶ addūcerent, tamquam⁷ ab ipsis corruptus alia⁸ atque antea sentiret, neque id frūstrā fecissent, idque Hannibal comperisset seque ab interioribus cōsiliis sēgregārī⁹ vidisset, tempore¹⁰ datō adiit ad regem, eique cum multa dē fidē suā et odio in Rōmānōs commemorasset, hoc adiūnxit. "Peter meus," inquit, "Hamilcar, puerulō¹¹ mē, utpote¹² nōn amplius novem annōs nato,¹³ in Hispāniam imperātor proficiscēns Karthagine, Iovī optimō maximō hostiās¹⁴ immolāvit. Quae dīvina rēs dum cōficiebatur, quaesivit a mē vellemne sēcum in castra proficisci. Id cum libenter accēpissem atque ab eō petere¹⁵ coepissem nē dubitāret ducere, tum ille, 'faciam,' inquit, 'si mihi fidem, quam postulō, dederis.' Simul mē ad aram¹⁶ addūxit, apud quam sacrificāre¹⁷ instituerat, eamque cēteris remōtis tenentem iūrāre iussit, numquam mē in amicitia cum Rōmānis fore. Id ego iūsiurandum patri datum usque ad hanc aetātem ita cōservāvī, ut nēmīni dubium esse dēbeat, quā reliquō tempore eādē mente sim futūrus. Quare si quid amice¹⁸ dē Rōmānis cōgitābis nōn imprūdenter feceris si mē¹⁹ celāris; cum quidam bellum parābis, tē ipsum frūstrāberis²⁰ si nōn mē in eō principem posueris."

¹ ut omittam, *to omit*.

² Hannibal is understood as subject.

³ ruber, rubra, rubrum, *red*.

⁴ darent operam, *try*.

⁵ clandestinus, -a, -um, *hidden, secret*.

⁶ rēgi, *in the king's eyes*.

⁷ tamquam, *as if*.

⁸ alia atque antea sentiret, *felt differently than before*.

⁹ sēgregō, āre, āvi, ātus, *separate, exclude*.

¹⁰ tempore, *chance*.

¹¹ puerulus, i, m., *little boy*.

¹² utpote, *namely, as being*.

¹³ nātō, agrees with mē.

¹⁴ hostia, ae, f., *victim*.

¹⁵ petere nē dubitāret, *beg him not to hesitate*.

¹⁶ āra, ae, f., *altar*.

¹⁷ sacrificō, āre, āvi, ātus, *sacrifice*.

¹⁸ amice, adv., from amicus.

¹⁹ mē, *from me*.

²⁰ frūstror, āri, ātus sum, *deceive, trick*.

Hannibal's campaign in Spain, and his march over the Alps

18. Hæc igitur quæ diximus ætate cum patre in Hispaniam profectus est; cuius post obitum, Hasdrubale imperatōre suffectō,¹ equitātū omni præfuit. Hōc quoque interfectō, exercitus summam imperiī ad eum detulit. Id² Karthāginem delatū publice comprobātum³ est. Sic Hannibal minor quinque et vīginti annis nātus imperator factus proximō trienniō⁴ omnes gentes Hispaniæ bellō subēgit;⁵ Saguntum foederatam⁶ civitatem, vi expugnāvit, trēs exercitūs maximōs comparāvit. Ex his ūnum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispaniā reliquit, tertium in Italiā sēcum dūxit. Saltum⁷ Pyrenaeum trānsiit. Quācumque⁸ iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis cōflitit; nēmīnem nisi victum dimisit. Ad Alpēs posteaquam vēnit, quæ Italiā ab Galliā sēiungunt,⁹ quās nēmō umquam cum exercitū ante eum præter Herculem Grāiū trānsierat (quō factō is hodiē saltus Grāius appellātur), Alpicōs cōnantēs prohibere trānsitū¹⁰ concidit, loca patefecit, itinera mūniit,¹¹ effecit ut eā¹² elephāntus ōrnatus¹³ ire posset, quā antea ūnus homō inermis vix poterat rēpere.¹⁴ Hæc cōpiās trādūxit in Italiāque pervēnit.

¹ sufficiō, ere, fēci, fectus, *appoint instead*.

² Id, i. e., his appointment.

³ comprobo, āre, āvi, ātus, *approve*.

⁴ triennium, i, n., *a period of three years*.

⁵ subēgit, *subdued*.

⁶ foederatūs, a, um, *allied*.

⁷ Saltum, *mountain range*.

⁸ quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *whoever, whatever*.

⁹ sēiungō, ere, iūni, iūctus, *separate*.

¹⁰ trānsitus, ūs, m., *passage*.

¹¹ mūniit, *buill*.

¹² eā . . . quā, *there . . . where*.

¹³ ōrnātus, *with its load*.

¹⁴ rēpō, ere, rēpsi, rēptum, *creep*.

The victories in Italy

19. Cōflixerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione cōsule eumque pepulerat. Cum hōc eōdem Clastidi¹ apud Padum dēcernit sauciumque inde ac fugātum dimittit. Tertiō idem Scipiō cum collēga Tiberiō Longō apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. Cum iis manum cōnseruit;² utrōsque prōfligāvit. Inde per Ligurēs Appenninum trānsiit, petēns Etrūriam. Hōc itinere adeō gravi morbō adficitur oculōrum, ut postea numquam dextrō aequē bene ūsus sit. Quā valetūdine cum etiam-tum premerētur lecticāque³ ferrētur, C. Flamīnium cōsulem apud Trāsumennum cum exercitū insidiis circumventum occidit, neque multō post C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlectā manū saltū occupantem. Hinc in Āpuliam pervenit. Ibi obviam⁴ ei vēnerunt duo cōsulēs, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. Utriusque exercitū unō proeliō fugāvit. Paulum cōsulem occidit et aliquot praetereā cōsulārēs, in iis Cn. Serviliū Geminū, quī superiore annō fuerat cōsul.

¹ Clastidii, locative case.

² cōnserō, ere, serui, sertus, *join*; with manum, *join battle*.

³ lectica, ae, f., *couch, sedan*.

⁴ obviam, *to meet*.

He outwits Fabius and defeats the Roman generals

20. Hāc pugnā pugnātā, Rōmam profectus est nūllō resistente. In propinquis urbī montibus morātus est. Cum aliquot ibi diēs castra habuisset et Capuam reverteretur, Q. Fabius Maximus, dictātor Rōmānus, in agrō Falernō ei se obiēcit. Hic clausus locōrum angustis, noctū sine ullō detrīmentō exercitū¹ se expedivit Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōri, dedit² verba. Namque obductā³ nocte sarmenta⁴ in cornibus iuvencōrum⁵ delīgata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispālātā⁶ immisit. Quō repentinō obiectō vīsū,⁷ tantum terrōrem iniēcit⁸ exercitui Rōmānōrum ut egredi extrā vāllum nēmō sit ausus. Hanc post rem gestam nōn ita multis diēbus M. Minucium Rāfum, magistrum⁹ equitum pari ac¹⁰ dictātōrem imperiō, dolō prōductum in proelium fugāvit. Tiberium Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōsulem, in¹¹ Lūcānis absēns¹² in insidiās inductum sustulit. M. Claudium Mārcellum, quīnquies¹³ cōsulem, apud Venusiam pari modō interfēcit. Longum est omnia enumerāre proelia. Quārē hoc unum satis erit dictum, ex quō intellegi possit quantus ille fuerit: quamdiū in Italiā fuit, nēmō ei in aciē restitit, nēmō adversus eum post Cannēsem pugnam in campō castra posuit.

¹ exercitūs, objective genitive after detrīmentō.

² dedit verba, *deceived*.

³ obductā nocte, *under the cover of night*.

⁴ sarmenta, *twigs*.

⁵ iuencus, I, m., *bullock*.

⁶ dispālōr, āri, ātus, *wander about*.

⁷ vīsus, ūs, m., *sight*.

⁸ iniēcit, Hannibal is understood as subject.

⁹ magister, ri, m., *master, commander*.

¹⁰ ac dictātōrem, *to that of dictator*.

¹¹ in Lūcānis, modifies sustulit.

¹² absens, *although not in command personally*.

¹³ quīnquies, *five times*.

Hannibal, after retiring from Italy, is defeated by Scipio at Lama

21. Hinc invictus patriam defensum¹ revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primò apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugarat. Cum hoc exhaustis² iam patriae facultatibus cupivit impraesentiarum³ bellum componere,⁴ quò valentior postea congredereetur. In colloquium convenit, conditiones non convenerunt.⁵ Post id factum paucis diebus apud Lamam cum eodem cōfligit; pulsus (incrédibile dictū) biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrūmetum pervēnit, quod abest ab Lamā circiter milia passuum trecenta. In hac fugā Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati⁶ sunt ei; quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrūmeti reliquos ē fugā collegit; novis delectibus⁷ paucis diebus multis contraxit.

¹ defensum, supine.

² exhaustis, *drained*.

³ impraesentiarum, *for the present*.

⁴ compono, ere, posui, positus, *settle, end*.

⁵ convenerunt, *were agreed upon*.

⁶ insidior, āri, ātus, *lie in wait for*.

⁷ delectus, us, m., *a recruiting*.

Hannibal at Home. His flight to Antiochus

22. Cum in apparando¹ acerrimē esset occupatus, Karthaginiensēs bellum cum Rōmānīs composuērunt. Ille nihilō sētius exercitui postea praefuit rēsque in Africā gessit itemque Magō frater eius usque ad² P. Sulpiciū C. Aurēliū cōsulēs. His³ enim magistratibus lēgātī Karthaginiensēs Rōmā vērunt, qui senātui populōque Rōmānō grātias agerent, quod cum iis pācem fēcissent ob eamque rem corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent simulque peterent ut obsidēs eōrum Fregellis⁴ essent captivique redderentur. His ex senātūs cōsultō respōsum est: mūnus eōrum grātum acceptumque esse; obsidēs, quō locō rogārent, futūrōs; captivōs nōn remissūrōs, quod⁵ Hannibalem cuius operā susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimū nōmīnī Rōmānō, etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent itemque frātrē eius Magōnem. Hōc respōsō Karthaginiensēs cōgnitō Hannibalem domum et Magōnem revocāunt. Hūc ut rediit, rēx factus est, postquam imperātor fuerat, annō secundō et vicēsimo; ut enim Rōmae cōsulēs, sic Karthāgine quotannis annui bini rēgēs creābantur. In eō magistratū parī diligentiā sē Hannibal praebuit ac⁶ fuerat in bello. Namque effēcit ex novīs vectigālibus nōn solum ut esset pecūnia quae Rōmānīs ex⁷ foedere⁸ penderēt, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerāriō⁹ repōnerētur.¹⁰ Deinde M. Claudiō L. Furiō cōsulibus, Rōmā lēgātī Karthāginem vērunt. Hōs Hannibal ratus sui expōscendi grātia missōs, priusquam iis senātus¹¹ darētur, nāvem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum profūgit. Hāc rē palam¹² factā Poenī nāves duās, quae eum comprehenderent, si possent cōsequi, miserunt; bona eius publicāunt, domum a fundamentis¹³ disiecērunt, ipsum exsulem iudicāunt.

¹ apparō āre, āvi, ātus, *prepare*.

² ad, *to the time of*.

³ His magistratibus, ablative absolute.

⁴ Fregellis, *at Fregellae*.

⁵ quod Hannibalem . . . etiam nunc cum imperiō apud exercitum habērent, *because they even then kept Hannibal in command of the army*.

⁶ ac, *as*.

⁷ ex, *in accordance with*.

⁸ foedus, foederis, n., *treaty*.

⁹ aerārium, i, n., *treasury*.

¹⁰ repōnō, ere, posui, positus, *lay, restore*.

¹¹ senātus, *a hearing before the senate*.

¹² palam factā = nuntiātā.

¹³ fundamentum, i, n., *foundation, groundwork*.

He arouses Antiochus to war against the Romans

23. At Hannibal annō quārtō, postquam domō profūgerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio cōsulibus, cum quinque nāvibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeōrum, si¹ forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi² spē fiduciāque inducerentur,³ cui iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. Hūc Magonem frātre exciuit.⁴ Id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eādem, quā frātre, absentem adfēcērunt poenā. Illi⁵ desperātis rēbus cum solvissent nāves ac vēla⁶ ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit. De Magōnis interitū duplex memoria prōdita est; namque alii naufragiō,⁷ alii a servulis⁸ ipsius interfectum eum scriptum⁹ reliquerunt. Antiochus autem, si tam in gerendō bellō cōsiliis eius¹⁰ parere voluisset quam¹¹ in suscipiendō instituerat, propius Tiberi¹² quam Thermopylis de summā imperiī dimicasset. Quem¹³ etsi multa stultē¹⁴ cōnari videbat,¹⁵ tamen nullā deseruit in rē. Praefuit paucis nāvibus, quas ex Syriā iussus erat in Asiam dūcere, iisque adversus Rhodiōrum classem in Pamphylīō mari cōflexit. Quō cum¹⁶ multitudine adversariōrum sui¹⁷ superarentur, ipse, quō cornū rem gessit, fuit superior.

¹ si (to see), *if*.

² Antiochi spē fiduciāque, *because of their faith and hope in Antiochus*.

³ inducerentur, *they could be drawn into*.

⁴ exciuit (or exciuit), *ere (ire), citi (it) citus (itus), call out, summon*.

⁵ Illi, *i. e., Hannibal and Mago*.

⁶ vēlum, *i. n., sail*.

⁷ naufragium, *i. n., shipwreck*.

⁸ servulus, *i. n., a little slave*.

⁹ scriptum reliquerunt, *they left a record to the effect that*.

¹⁰ eius, *i. e., Hannibal*.

¹¹ quam in suscipiendō instituerat, *as he had done in beginning it*.

¹² Tiberi, *dative with propius*.

¹³ Quem, *i. e., Antiochus*.

¹⁴ stultē, *foolishly*.

¹⁵ videbat, *Hannibal is understood as subject*.

¹⁶ cum, *concessive*.

¹⁷ sui, *his forces*.

He goes to Crete, and there saves his money by a trick

24. Antiochō fugātō, verēns nē dederetur, quod sine dubiō accidisset si¹ sui fēcisset potestātem, Crētā ad Gortȳniōs vēnit, ut ibi quō sē cōnferret cōnsiderāret.² Vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magnō sē fore periculō, nisi quid prōvidisset, propter avāritiam Crētensium; magnam enim sēcum pecūniā portābat, dē quā sciebat exisse fāmā. Itaque capit tāle cōsiliū. Amphorās³ complūrēs complet plumbō,⁴ summās⁵ operit⁶ aurō et argentō. Hās, praesentibus principibus, depōnit in templō Dignae, simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fidei crēdere. His in errōrem inductis, statuās aēneās,⁷ quās sēcum portābat, omni suā pecūniā completās easque in prōpatulō⁸ domi abicit.⁹ Gortȳnii templum magnā cūrā custōdiunt, nōn tam ā ceteris quam ab Hannibāle, nē ille, inscientibus its, tolleret sēcumque dūceret.

¹ si sui fēcisset potestātem, *if he had given them a chance at him.*

² cōsiderō, āre, āvi, ātus, *look at carefully, consider.*

³ amphora, ae, f., *a two handled jar.*

⁴ plumbō, *lead.*

⁵ summās, sc. amphorās, *the tops of the jars.*

⁶ operiō, ire, perui, pertus, *cover.*

⁷ aēneus, a, um, *bronze.*

⁸ prōpatulum, i, n., *courtyard.*

⁹ *As if they were of no value.*

Hannibal goes to Prusias. His bit of stratagem

25. Sic, cōservātis suis rēbus Poenus, illūsis¹ Crētēnsibus omnibus, ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit. Apud quem eōdem animō fuit ergā Italiā, neque aliud quicquam ēgit quam rēgem armāvit et exercuit adversus Rōmānōs. Quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus² esse rōbustum,³ conciliābat cēterōs rēgēs, adjungebat bellicōsās nātiōnēs. Dissidebat⁴ ab eō⁵ Pergamēnus rēx Eumenēs, Rōmānis amīcissimus, bellumque inter eōs gerebatur et marī et terrā; quō magis cupiēbat eum Hannibal opprimī. Sed utrobique⁶ Eumenēs plūs valebat propter Rōmānōrum societātem: quem si remōvisset faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābatur. Ad hunc interficiendum tālem iniit ratiōnem. Classe paucis diēbus erant dēcrētūri. Superābatur nāvium multitudīne; dolō erat pugnandum, cum pār nōn esset armis. Imperāvit quā plūrimās venenātās⁷ serpentes⁸ vivās colligi easque in vāsa⁹ fictilia¹⁰ conici. Hārum cum effēcisset magnā multitudīnem, diē ipsō, quō factūrus erat nāvāle proelium, classiāriōs convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unā Eumenis rēgis concurrant nāvem, ā cēteris tantum satis¹¹ habeant sē defendere. Ad illōs facile serpentium multitudīne cōsecūtūrōs. Rēx autem in quā nāve veherētur ut¹² scīrent sē factūrū; quem si aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iis pollicētur praemiō fore.

¹ illūdō, ere, lūsi, lūsum, *deceive*.

² minus, *not very*.

³ rōbustus, a, um, *powerful*.

⁴ dissideo, ēre, sēdi, sēssum, *differ*.

⁵ eō, i. e., Prusias.

⁶ utrobique, *on both sides; here, on land and sea*.

⁷ venenātus, a, um, *poisonous*.

⁸ serpēs, serpentis, f., *snake*.

⁹ vās, vāsis, n. pl., vāsa, vāsōrum, *jar*.

¹⁰ fictilis, e., *earthen*.

¹¹ satis habeant, *should consider it enough*.

¹² ut scīrent sē factūrū, *he would see to it that they would know*.

By his strategy he defeats Eumenes

26. Tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. Quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret suis, quō locō Eumenes esset, tabellarium¹ in scapha² cum caduceo³ mittit. Qui ubi ad naves adversariōrum pervenit epistulamque ostendens se regem professus est⁴ quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemō dubitabat quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. Tabellarius ducis nave declarata suis,⁵ eodem unde erat egressus se recepit. At Eumenes soluta⁶ epistula nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent. Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiēbat, tamen proelium statim committere nō dubitavit. Hōrum in concursu Bithyni Hannibalis praecepto⁷ universi navem Eumenis adiungunt. Quōrum vim rex cum sustinere nō posset, fuga salutem petiit; quam⁸ consecutus nō esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximō litore erant collocata. Reliquae Pergamēnae naves cum adversariōs premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra mentionem fecimus, conici coepta sunt. Quae⁹ iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt, neque quare id fieret peteret intellegi. Postquam autem naves suas opplētās conspexerunt serpentibus, novā re perterriti cum quid¹⁰ potissimum vitarent nō viderent, puppēs vertērunt seque ad sua castra nautica¹¹ retulerunt. Sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenōrum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias pedestribus cōpitis pari prudentia pepulit adversariōs.

¹ Tabellarius, i, m., messenger, herald.

² scapha, small boat.

³ caduceus, i, m., herald's staff.

⁴ professus est, stated.

⁵ suis, to his own men.

⁶ soluta, opened.

⁷ praecepto, in accordance with the command.

⁸ quam consecutus nō esset, he would not have reached safety.

⁹ Quae iacta, the throwing of these.

¹⁰ quid potissimum vitarent, what they should avoid most.

¹¹ nauticus, a, um, naval.

His death by poison

27. Quae dum in Asia geruntur, accidit cāsa ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae apud¹ T. Quīntium Flāminium cōsulārem cēnarent,² atque ibi dē Hannibale mentionē factā ex iis ūnus diceret eum in Prūsiae regnō esse. Id posterō diē Flāminius senātui detulit. Patrēs³ cōscripti, qui Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine insidiis futurōs existimārent, lēgātōs in Bithyniam misērunt, in iis Flāminium, qui ab rēge peterent nē⁴ inimicissimum suum sēcum haberet sibi quē dēderet. His Prūsia negāre ausus nōn est; illud recusāvit, nē id a sē fieri postulārent, quod adversus ius hospitii esset; ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent; locum ubi esset facile inventūros. Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tēnebat in castellō, quod ei a rēge datum erat mūneri, idque sic aedificārat ut in omnibus partibus aedificiū exitūs haberet, scilicet⁵ verēs nē⁷ usū veniret quod accidit. Hūc cum lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnissent ac multitudīne domum eius circumdēdissent, puer ab iānuā⁸ prōspiciens Hannibali dixit plūrēs praeter cōsuetūdinem armātōs apparēre. Qui imperāvit ei ut omnēs forēs¹⁰ aedificiū circumfret ac properē¹¹ sibi nūntiāret num¹² eōdem modō undique obsiderētur. Puer cum celeriter quid esset renūntiasset omnēsque exitūs occupātōs ostendisset, sēnsit id nōn fortuitō factum, sed sē peti neque¹³ sibi diūtius vitam esse retinendam. Quam¹⁴ nē aliēnō arbitriō dimitteret, memor¹⁵ pristinārum virtūtum, venēnum,¹⁶ quod semper sēcum habere cōsuērat, sūmpsit.

¹ apud, *at the house of.*

² cēnōm, āre, āvi, ātus, *dine.*

³ Patrēs cōscripti, *senators.*

⁴ nē inimicissimum suum sēcum haberet, *that he should not keep their greatest enemy with him.*

⁵ comprehenderent, subjunctive representing imperative of direct discourse.

⁶ scilicet, *evidently.*

⁷ nē usū veniret, *lest that should happen.*

⁸ iānus, ae, f., *door.*

⁹ apparēre, *appeared.*

¹⁰ foris, foris, f., *door.*

¹¹ properē, *quickly.*

¹² num, *whether.*

¹³ neque retinendam, *could not be preserved.*

¹⁴ Quam, i. e., *vitam.*

¹⁵ memor, memoris, *mindful.*

¹⁶ venēnum, i, n., *poison.*

His historians and his own writings

28. Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus¹ laboribus, annō adquiēvit² septuāgēsīmō. Quibus cōsulibus interierit, nōn³ convenit. Namque Atticus M. Claudiō Marcellō Q. Fabiō Labeōne cōsulibus mortuum in annālī⁴ suō scriptum relīquit, at Polybius L. Aemiliō Paulō Cn. Baebiō Tamphilō, Sulpicius autem Blithō P. Cornēliō Cethegō M. Baebiō Tamphilō. Atque⁵ hīc tantus vir tantisque bellis districtus⁶ nōn nihil temporis tribuit litterīs. Namque aliquot eius librī sunt Graecō sermōne cōfecti, in iis ad⁷ Rhodiōs dē⁸ Cn. Manliū Vulsonis in Asiā rēbus gestis. Hūius⁹ bellī¹⁰ gesta multī memoriae prōdiderunt, sed ex hīs duo¹¹ qui cum eō in castris fuērunt simulque vixerunt, quamdiū fortūna passa est, Silenus et Sōsilus Lacedaemonius. Atque hōc Sōsiliō Hannibal litterarū Graecarū ūsus est doctōre.

Sed nōs¹² tempus est hūius librī facere finem et Rōmānōrum explicāre imperatōrēs, quō facilius collātis utrōrumque¹³ factis, qui viri praeferendi sint, possit iudicārī.

¹ perfungor, i, fūctus sum, *perform*.

² adquiēscō, ere, quiēvi, quiētus, *go to rest, die*.

³ nōn convenit, *it is not agreed*.

⁴ annālis, annālis, m., *record*.

⁵ Atque, *and yet*.

⁶ dīstringō, ere, strīnxi, strictus, *draw apart, engage*.

⁷ ad Rhodiōs, i. e., liber ad Rhodiōs.

⁸ dē, governs rēbus gestis.

⁹ Hūius, i. e., Hannibal.

¹⁰ bellī gesta, deeds of war.

¹¹ duo, sc. sunt.

¹² nōs facere finem, *for me to make an end*.

¹³ utrōrumque, i. e., Roman and Greek generals.

C. IULII CAESARIS

De Bello Gallico

LIBER TERTIUS

Caesar sends Galba against the Nantuates, Veragri, and Seduni. Galba establishes winter quarters at Octodurus.

29. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus in Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui a finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summam Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit quod iter per Alpes quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portorii¹ mercatores ire consueverant,² patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causam collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot³ proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vicum Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle,⁴ non magna⁵ adiecta⁶ planitie⁷ altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum⁸ hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem eius vicus Gallis concessit, alteram vacuum ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit.⁹ Eum locum vallum fossaque munivit.

¹ portorii, *customs duty*.

² consueverant, contracted from consueverant, *were* (lit., *had become*) *accustomed*.

³ aliquot, indeclin. adj., *several*.

⁴ vallis, vallis, f., *a valley*.

⁵ non magna = *parva*.

⁶ adicio, ere, ieci, iectus, add, adiecta as an adj., *lying near*.

⁷ planitie, *plain*.

⁸ Cum, *causal*.

⁹ attribuo, ere, tribui, tributus, *assign*.

Mountain tribes revolt and occupy the neighboring heights

30. Cum diēs hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explorātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte victi quam Gallis concesserat omnēs noctū discessisse montēsque qui impendērent a maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī. Id¹ aliquot dē causis acciderat, ut subitō Galli bellī renovandī² legiōnisque opprimendae cōsiliū caperent; primum, quod legiōnem unam, neque³ eam plēnissimā,⁴ detractis cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillatim⁵ qui commeātūs petendī causā missi erant, absentibus⁶ propter paucitatem⁷ despiciēbant;⁸ tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem⁹ loci, cum ipsi¹⁰ ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tela conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Accēdebat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum¹¹ nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn solum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis¹² culmina¹³ Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungere¹⁴ sibi persuasum habēbant.

¹ Id, explained by the following *ut* clause.

² renovō, āre, āvī, ātus, *renew*.

³ neque, *and not*.

⁴ plēnus, a, um, *full*.

⁵ singillatim, adv., *one by one*.

⁶ absentibus, abl. absol. with complūribus.

⁷ paucitas, ātis, f., noun of pauci.

⁸ despiciēbant, *despised*.

⁹ propter iniquitatem, *on account of the unfavorable character*.

¹⁰ ipsi, i. e., the mountaineers.

¹¹ obsidum nōmine, *under the name of hostages, as hostages*.

¹² possessionis, sc. causa.

¹³ culmen, culminis, n., *top*.

¹⁴ adiungō, ere, nxi, nctus, *join*.

The Romans meet in council and determine to defend their positions

31. His nūntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernōrum mūnitiōnesque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bellō timendum existimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententias exquirere¹ coepit. Quo in cōnsiliō cum tantum repentini periculi² praeter optinōnem accidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armatorū complēta cōspicerentur neque subsidio³ veniri⁴ neque commeātus supportari interclūsis itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae eius modī sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptiōne factā, isdēm itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Maiōri tamen parti placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō, interim rei ēventum experiri⁵ et castra dēfendere.

¹ exquirere, *ask for*.

² periculi, partitive genitive with tantum.

³ subsidio, dative of purpose.

⁴ veniri, impersonal.

⁵ experiri and dēfendere, subjects of placuit.

The Romans are attacked by a larger force

32. Brevi spatio interiecto,¹ vix ut iis rebus² quas constituissent comparandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes³ ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque⁴ in vallum conicere. Nostri primo integris⁵ viribus fortiter propugnare neque ullum frustra⁶ telum ex loco superiore mittere, et quaecumque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc⁷ superari, quod diuturnitate⁸ pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris⁹ viribus succedebant; quarum rerum¹⁰ a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo¹¹ defesso¹² ex pugna excedendi,¹³ sed ne saucio¹⁴ quidem eius loci ubi constiterat relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

¹ interiecto, from inter-iacio.

² rebus, dative.

³ hostes, nom. as of the historical infinitives decurrere and conicere.

⁴ gaesum, f, n., *heavy javelin*.

⁵ integris viribus, abl. absol., denoting time; integer, gra, grum, *untouched, fresh*.

⁶ frustra, *in vain*.

⁷ hoc, ablative of specification.

⁸ diuturnitate, *long duration*.

⁹ integris viribus, abl. of description.

¹⁰ rerum, partitive gen. with nihil.

¹¹ non, modo, sc. non.

¹² defesso, saucio, indirect objects of dabatur.

¹³ excedendi, loci recipiendi, sui recipiendi, modify facultas.

¹⁴ saucius, a, um, *wounded, hurt, injured*.

After fighting for six hours, Galba decides upon a sally

33. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continenter pugnāretur,¹ ac nōn solum vīres sed etiam tela nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs acrius instārent, languidiōribusque² nostris vāllum scindere³ et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pilī⁴ centuriō, quem⁵ Nervicō⁶ proeliō complūribus cōfectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militum, vir et cōsiliī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt⁷ atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si eruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter milites certiōres facit paulisper intermitterent⁸ proelium ac tantummodo⁹ tela missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signo ex castris erumperent¹⁰ atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

¹ pugnāretur, *had been* (and was still being) *fought*.

² languidiōribus nostris, abl. absol. of cause.

³ scindō, ere, scidi, scissus, *split, cut down*.

⁴ primī pilī, *of the first rank*.

⁵ quem, subject of confectum esse.

⁶ Nervicō, *of the Nervii*.

⁷ accurrunt, *rushed up*.

⁸ intermitterent, and the four following subjunctives represent the imperative of direct discourse.

⁹ tantummodo, *only*.

¹⁰ erumpō, ere, rupi, ruptum, *burst forth*.

The Gauls are completely routed. Galba goes into winter quarters

34. Quod iuss¹ sunt faciunt, ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque sui² colligendi³ hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata⁴ fortuna eos qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant undique circumventos intercipiunt,⁵ et ex hominum milibus⁶ amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat,⁷ plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fuis⁸ armisque⁹ exutis¹⁰ se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat atque alio¹¹ se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat,¹² aliis occurrere rebus¹³ videbat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die, omnibus eius victi aedificiis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

¹ iuss¹ sunt, sc. facere. The object of facere is quod.

² sui colligendi, of collecting themselves, i. e., of rallying.

³ colligō, ere, legi, lectus, collect.

⁴ commutata, changed.

⁵ intercipiunt, cut off, intercept.

⁶ ex milibus, modifies tertia parte.

⁷ consto, stare, stiti, status, stand together, stand firm. Impersonal as here, it was agreed, it was ascertained.

⁸ fundō, ere, fudi, fusus, pour, throw, rout.

⁹ armis, abl. of separation with exutis; latter agrees with copiis.

¹⁰ exuo, ere, exui, exutus, draw off, despoil.

¹¹ alio, one, other.

¹² meminerat, remembered.

¹³ rebus, conditions.

General Latin-English Vocabulary

ā, ab, prep. with abl., *from, by*.
abeō, ire, ii, itūrus, *go away*.
absinthium, ī, n., *wormwood*.
absolūtiō, ōnis, f., *absolution*.
absolvō, ere, vī, ūtus, *release, free*.
abstergeō, ēre, rsī, rsus, *wipe away*.
ac (atque) *and, and also*; **ac** is not used before vowels.
accēdō, ere, accessī, accessum, *draw near, advance*.
accendō, ere, accendī, accensum, *enkindle, rouse*.
accidit, accidere, accidit, impers., *it happens*.
accipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *receive*.
acclīnis, e, *inclined to, disposed to*.
accūsō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call one to account, accuse*.
acervus, ī, m., *heap, pile*.
acētum, ī, n., *sour wine, vinegar*.
aciēs, ēī, f., *line of battle*.
ācritēr, sharply, fiercely.
acūmen, inis, n., *keenness*.
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, vigorous, keen, severe*.
ad, to, towards, prep. with acc.
ad multam noctem, *till late at night*.
addicō, ere, xī, ctus, *adjudge, devote*.
addūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead on, impel*.
adeō, adv., *so much, to such a degree*.
adeō, ire, ii, itus, *go to, visit*.
adhūc, up to this time, still, hitherto.
aditus, ūs, m., *approach*.
adiūtrix, icis, f., *helper, promoter*.
administrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *perform*.
admīror, -ārī, ātus, *sum wonder at, admire*.
admodum, quite, very much.
adorior, orīrī, ortus sum, *attack*.
adulēscēns, entis, m., *young man*.
adveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *arrive*.
adventus, ūs, m., *approach, arrival*.
adversārius, ii, m., *adversary*.

adversō, āre, āvī, ātus, *oppose*.
 adversus, a, um, *adverse*.
 advocāta, ae, f., *advocate*.
 advocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call or summon to*.
 aedificium, i, n., *building*.
 aedificō, āre, āvī, ātus, *build, erect*.
 aeger, ra, rum, *sick*.
 aequus, a, um, *level*.
 aestas, ātis, f., *summer*.
 aestimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *determine, estimate*.
 aestus, ūs, m., *heat*.
 aetas, ātis, f., *life, age*.
 aeternus, a, um, *everlasting, eternal*.
 afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, *bring*.
 ager, agrī, m., *field, land*.
 agger, eris, m., *embankment, rampart*.
 agmen, inis, n., *army (on the march)*.
 agō, ere, ēgī, āctus, *do*.
 agricola, ae, m., *farmer*.
 aiō, ———, ———, ———, *say*.
 alacer, cris, cre, *eager*.
 aliēnus, a, um, *unfavorable*.
 aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, adj., *some*.
 aliquis, aliquid, *some one, something*.
 Allobrogēs, um, m. pl., *Allobroges, a Gallic tribe*.
 altitūdō, inis, f., *depth, height*.
 altus, a, um, *high, deep*.
 amābilis, e, *worthy of love, lovely*.
 amīcē, *in a friendly way*.
 amīcitia, ae, f., *friendship*.
 amīcus, i, m., *friend*.
 āmittō, ere, mīsi, missus, *lose*.
 amō, āre, āvī, ātus, *love*.
 amoenus, a, um, *delightful, pleasant*.
 amor, ōris, m., *love*.
 amplexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embrace*.
 amplius, *more*.
 amplus, a, um, *great, glorious*.
 ancora, ae, f., *anchor*.
 angelus, i, m., *angel*.
 angō, ere, xī, ctus and xus, *bind*.

angustiae, ārum, f. pl., *a narrow pass.*
angustus, a, um, *narrow.*
anima, ae, f., *air, the breath of life.*
animadvertō, ere, vertī, versus, *notice.*
animal, animālis, n., *animal.*
animō, āre, āvī, ātus, *animate, encourage.*
animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, courage.*
annus, ī, m., *year.*
ante, *before, in front of, prep. with acc.*
ante, adv., *before.*
anteā, *before, formerly.*
antecēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *precede.*
antiquus, a, um, *old, ancient.*
apertus, a, um, *open.*
apostolus, ī, m., *apostle.*
appareō, ēre, uī, itus, *appear, be evident.*
appellō, āre, āvī, ātus, *name, call.*
appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātus, *approach.*
Aprīlis, e, adj., *of April.*
aptus, a, um, *suitable, fit.*
apud, prep. with acc., *among, with.*
aqua, ae, f., *water.*
aquila, ae, f., *eagle.*
āra, ae, f., *altar.*
arbitror, āri, ātus sum, *consider.*
arbor, oris, f., *tree.*
arceō, ēre, uī, ———, *keep from, hinder.*
arcessō, ere, ivī, itus, *summon.*
archangelus, ī, m., *archangel.*
ardeō, ēre, -rsī, rsus, *take fire, kindle.*
arduus, a, um, *steep, difficult.*
Ariovistus, ī, m., *Ariovistus, king of the Germans.*
arma, ōrum, n. pl., *weapons, arms, armour.*
armātūra, ae, f., *equipment.*
armenta, ōrum, n. pl., *herds, cattle.*
armō, āre, āvī, ātus, *arm.*
arō, āre, āvī, ātus, *plough.*
arrideō, ēre, risī, risus, *smile upon.*
arx, arcis, f., *castle.*
ascendō, ere, dī, sum, *ascend.*
asinus, ī, m., *ass.*

- aspectus**, ūs, m., *sight, look, appearance.*
asper, era, erum, *rough.*
aspiciō, ere, pēxi, **pectus**, *behold.*
assentātiō, ōnis, f., *flattery.*
assistō, ere, astitī, ———, *stand.*
Athēnae, ārum, f., *Athens.*
auctōritās, ātis, f., *authority.*
audācia, ae, f., *boldness.*
audācter, *courageously.*
audax, audācis, *bold, daring.*
audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-dep., *dare.*
audiō, īre, īvi, ītus, *hear.*
aufugiō, ere, fūgī, ———, *flee, run away.*
augeō, ēre, auxī, auctus, *increase.*
augur, is, m. and f., *augur, soothsayer.*
auris, is, f., *ear.*
aurum, ī, n., *gold.*
aut, conj., *or.* **aut . . . aut** *either . . . or.*
autem, conj. (never first in a sentence), *but, however.*
auxilia, ōrum, n. pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*
Avāricum, ī, n., *Avaricum, a Gallic town.*
avē, imperative 2d sing. of **aveō**, -ēre, *farewell, hail.*
āvertō, ere, tī, **versus**, *avert, turn away, turn aside.*
avis, is, f., *bird.*
avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*
- baptista**, ae, m., *baptist.*
barbarus, a, um, *barbarian; as noun, m., a barbarian.*
beātus, a, um, *happy.*
Belgae, ārum, m. pl., *Belgians, a tribe of Gaul.*
bellō, āre, āvi, ātus, *make war, carry on war.*
bellum, ī, n., *war.*
bene, *well.*
benedicō, ere, xī, ctus, *bless, praise.*
beneficium, ī, n., *kindness, favor.*
benigne, adv., *kindly, benevolently.*
benignitās, ātis, f., *kindness.*
bestia, ae, f., *animal, beast.*
bīdum, ī, n., *two days.*
bonus, a, um, *good.*
bōs, bōvis, *ox.*

brevis, e, *short, brief.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

caedēs, is, f., *slaughter.*

caelum, ī, n., *sky, heaven* (climate, weather).

Caesar, aris, m., *Caesar.*

calamitās, ātis, f., *misfortune, calamity.*

canō, ere, cecinī, cantus, *produce melodious sounds, sing, play.*

capio, ere, cēpī, captus, *take, adopt, capture.*

captivus, a, um, *captive*; **captivus** (as noun), *a captive.*

caput, itis, n., *head.*

carcer, eris, m., *any inclosed space, prison, jail.*

caro, carnis, f., *flesh, body.*

carpō, ere, carpsī, carptum, *pluck, pick.*

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

cassus, a, um, *empty, void.*

castellum, ī, n., *fort.*

castra, ōrum, n. pl., *a camp.*

cāsus, ūs, m., *chance, accident.*

catholicus, a, um, *universal, catholic.*

causa, ae, f., *cause, condition.*

causā, abl., *for the sake of*; always preceded by the dependent genitive.

cautus, a, um, *cautious, careful.*

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, *yield.*

celer, eris, ere, *swift.*

celeritās, ātis, f., *swiftness.*

cēlō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep secret, conceal.*

celeriter, *quickly.*

cernō, ere, ———, ———, *perceive.*

cernuus, a, um, *inclined forwards.*

certamen, inis, n., *contest, strife.*

certē, *surely.*

certus, a, um, *sure.* N. B. Phrase **certior fierī** (lit., to be made more certain), i. e., *to be informed.*

cēterī, ae, a, *the rest, the other.*

Christus, ī, m., *Christ.*

cinis, eris, m., *ashes.*

circiter, adv., *about.*

circum, prep. with acc., *around.*

circumdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead around.*

circumeō, ire, īi, itus, *go around, surround.*

- circumveniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, surround.
 citerior, ius, comp. adj., nearer, hither.
 cīvis, is, m., citizen, fellow-citizen.
 cīvitas, tātis, f., state.
 clādēs, is, f., destruction, defeat.
 clam, secretly.
 clāmō, āre, āvī, ātus, call, cry out.
 clāmor, ōris, m., loud cry, noise.
 clārus, a, um, bright, splendid, happy.
 classis, is, f., fleet.
 claudō, ere, clausī, clausum, shut up, close, surround.
 clēmens, ntis, mild, gentle.
 cliēns, clientis, m., client.
 coena, ae, f., dinner, supper, the principal meal taken about midday.
 coepī, coepisse, began, have begun.
 coerceō, ēre, uī, itus, restrain, check.
 cōgitatio, ōnis, f., thought.
 cōgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, think.
 cognōscō, ere, nōvī, nitus, learn, become acquainted with.
 cōgō, ere, coēgī, coāctus, force, compel, collect.
 cohors, rtis, f., cohort.
 cohortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage, exhort.
 collis, is, m., hill.
 collocō, place, arrange, station.
 colloquium, ī, n., conversation, conference.
 colloquor, ī, locūtus sum, converse, confer.
 comēs, comitis, m. and f., companion, comrade.
 commeātus, ūs, m., supplies.
 committo, ere, mīsī, missus, I bring together; with proelium, to join battle.
 commūnio, ōnis, f., communion.
 commūniō, īre, īvī, īi, itus, fortify strongly.
 commūnis, e, common.
 commūtātiō, ōnis, f., change.
 comparō, āre, āvī, ātus, get ready.
 compatiōr, ī, passus, suffer with one, have compassion for.
 comperiō, īre, perī, pertus, find out.
 complēdō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, fill up.
 complūrēs, ra, gen., -ium, very many.
 compos, potis, adj., partaking of, sharing in.
 comprehendō, ere, dī, sus, seize.

concēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, grant.

concilium, ī, n., council.

concipiō, ere, cēpi, ceptus, conceive.

concordia, ae, f., union, harmony, agreement.

concurro, ere, curri, concursum, run together.

concursus, ūs, m., a running together.

condiciō, ōnis, f., condition, terms.

conditor, ōris, m., builder, founder.

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, bring together; se cōnferre, betake one's self.

cōnficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, exhaust.

confidentia, ae, f., confidence, trust.

cōnfidō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep., trust.

cōnfirmō, āre, āvī, ātus, I establish.

confiteor, ēri, fessus sum, confess.

confūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, restrain, check.

coniciō, ere, coniecī, coniectus, hurl.

coniungō, ere, iūnxī, iūctus, unite.

coniūratiō, ōnis, f., conspiracy.

coniūro, āre, āvī, ātus, conspire, form a league together.

cōnor, āri, ātus sum, endeavor, attempt.

cōnsector, āri, ātus sum, follow up.

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus sum, pursue, overtake.

cōnservō, āre, āvī, ātus, preserve.

cōnsidō, ere, sēdī, settle.

consilium, ī, n., deliberation, plan.

cōnsistō, ere, cōstitī, consist.

cōnspectus, ūs, m., view, sight.

cōnspiciō, ere, spexī, spectus, see.

constantia, ae, f., firmness, fortitude, perseverance.

cōnstat, stāre, stitit, it is evident.

cōnstituō, ere, uī, ūtus, decide, determine.

cōnsuēscō, suēvī, suētum, become accustomed.

consuētūdō, inis, f., custom, habit.

cōnsul, is, m., consul.

cōnsūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, use up.

contemnō, ere, contempsī, contemptum, disregard, despise.

contendō, ere, tendī, tentum, hurry, hasten.

contentus, a, um, contented.

contineō, ēre, uī, tentus, hold, keep together.

contrā, against, prep. with acc.

- contritus**, a, um, perf. pass. part. of **conterō**, *worn out, contrite*.
contrōversia, ae, f., *dispute*.
contumēlia, ae, f., *insult*.
conveniō, īre, vēnī, ventum, *come together*.
convertō, ere, tī, sum, *turn*.
convicium, ī, n., *outcry, clamor, censure*.
convīva, ae, m. or f., *guest*.
convocō, āre, āvī, ātus, *call together*.
cōpia, ae, f., *abundance, plenty*; in plur., *troops, forces*.
cor, cordis, n., *heart*.
cōram, adv. and prep., *in the presence of*.
cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* (of an army).
corōna, ae, f., *wreath, crown*.
corpus, oris, n., *body*.
corruō, ere, uī, ———, *fall down, collapse*.
coruscō, āre, ———, ———, *shake, glitter*.
cottidiē, adv., *every day, daily*.
Crassus, ī, m., *Crassus* (a man's name).
creātor, ōris, m., *creator*.
creātūra, ae, f., *creature*.
crēber, bra, brum, *frequent*.
crēdō, ere, didī, ditum, *believe*.
cremō, āre, āvī, ātus, *burn*.
creō, āre, āvī, ātus, *create, choose, elect*.
crucifixus, perf. part. of **crucifigō**, *crucified*.
crūdēlis, e, *cruel*.
cruentus, a, um, *bloody, stained with blood*.
crux, cis, f., *cross*.
culpa, ae, f., *guilt, fault*.
culpō, āre, āvī, ātus, *blame*.
cum, *because, since*.
cum, *with*, prep. with abl.
cum, *when*, conjunction.
cum, *though, although*.
cunctus, a, um, *whole, all*.
cupidus, a, um, *fond, eager*.
cūr, *why*.
cūra, ae, f., *trouble, care*.
cūrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *care for, take care of*.
cūrrō, ere, cucurri, ———, *fly, run*.
cūstōdia, ae, f., *custody*.
cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f., *guard, keeper*.

dē, *concerning*, prep. with abl.

dē tertiā vigiliā, *about the third watch* (a watch was equal to a fourth of the night).

dēbeō, *ēre*, uī, itus, *owe*; with an infinitive, *ought*.

dēcernō, *ere*, crēvī, crētus, *decree, decide*.

decet, *decēre*, decuit, *impers.*, *it becomes*.

decor, ōris, m., *comeliness, grace*.

dēditio, ōnis, f., *surrender*.

dēdō, *ere*, dēdidī, itus, *give up, surrender*.

dēdūcō, *ere*, dūxī, ductus, *lead away*.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f., *revolt*.

dēfendō, *ere*, fendi, fēnsus, *defend*.

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, f., *defence*.

dēfleō, *ēre*, ēvī, ētus, *lament, deplore*.

deiciō, *ere*, iēcī, iectus, *cast down, dejected*.

dēlectō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *delight*.

dēleō, *ēre*, ēvī, ētus, *destroy*.

dēliberō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *deliberate, consult*.

dēligō, *ere*, lēgī, lectum, *choose out, select*.

dēmigrō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *emigrate, depart*.

dēmōnstrō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *point out, show, mention*.

dēnique, adv., *finally, at last*.

dērelinquō, *ere*, liquī, lictus, *forsake*.

dēscendō, *ere*, dī, sum, *come down, descend*.

dēserō, *ere*, seruī, sertus, *abandon, desert, neglect*.

dēsiderō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *long for, desire*.

dēsistō, *ere*, stitī, ———, *cease*.

dēspērō, *āre*, āvī, ātus, *despair*.

dēspiciō, *ere*, exī, ectus, *despise*.

dēsum, dēsse, dēfuī, dēfutūrus, *be wanting, fail*.

dēterior, ius, comp. adj., *worse*.

dētrimentum, ī, n., *loss, damage*.

deus, ī, m., *god*.

dēvincō, *ere*, vīcī, victus, *overcome*.

dexter, tra, trum, *right*.

dīcō, *ere*, dixī, dictus, *say, appoint*.

dictātor, ōris, m., *dictator*.

dictum, ī, n., *word, utterance*.

diēs, diēī, m., *day*.

differō, *ferre*, distulī, dilātus, *differ*.

difficilis, e, *difficult*.

dignus, a, um, *worthy*.

diligentia, ae, f., *diligence*.

dignitas, ātis, f., *dignity, rank*.

dignus, a, um, *worthy*.

diligentia, ae, f., *diligence, carefulness, industry*.

dīmicō, *I contend*.

dīmitto, ere, mīsi, missus, *let go*.

dīripiō, ere, ripuī, reptus, *plunder*.

discēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart*.

disciplina, ae, f., *discipline*.

discipulus, ī, m., *learner, disciple*.

discordia, ae, f., *disunion, discord*.

discutiō, ere, cussi, cussus, *strike asunder, scatter*.

dispōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *distribute*.

dissēnsiō, ōnis, f., *disagreement*.

dissimilis, e, adj., *unlike, dissimilar*.

disturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *throw into disorder, disturb*.

diū, adv., *a long time*.

Diviciācus, ī, m., *Diviciacus*, a powerful Haeduan.

dīvidō, ere, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate*.

dīvitiae, ārum, f. plu., *riches, wealth*.

dō, dāre, dedī, datus, *give, render*.

doceō, ēre, uī, doctus, *teach, show*.

doleo, ēre, uī, itus, *feel sorry, be pained, grieve*.

dolor, is, m., *pain, sorrow*.

dominus, ī, m., *lord, ruler, master, chief*.

domus, ūs, f., *house, home*.

dōnec, *until*.

dōnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *give, present*.

dōnum, ī, n., *gift*.

dubitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *doubt, be in doubt*.

dūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead*.

dulcēdo, inis, f., *sweetness*.

dulcis, e, *sweet*.

dum, *while, until, as long as*.

Dumnorix, īgis, m., *Dumnorix*, a leader of the Haedui.

duodecim, indecl., *twelve*.

dux, ducis, m., *leader*.

ē, ex, *from, out of*, prep. with abl., **ex** is to be used before vowels or **h**.

ecclēsia, ae, f., *the Church*.

ēdoceō, ēre, uī, ēdoctus, *teach*.
 ēducō, āre, āvī, ātus, *bring up, educate*.
 ēdūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead forth*.
 efficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *make, render*.
 effugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *escape*.
 egēnus, a, um, *destitute, indigent*.
 egeō, ēre, uī, ———, *need, want, lack*.
 ego, mei, *I*.
 ēgredior, ī, gressus sum, *march out*.
 ēgregius, a, um, *excellent, eminent*.
 Ēia, interj., *we beseech, indeed*.
 ēiciō, ere, ēicī, ēiectus, *thrust out; sē ēicere, rush forth*.
 ēloquentia, ae, f., *eloquence*.
 emō, ere, ēmi, ēemptus, *buy*.
 ēnūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reveal, disclose*.
 eō, adv., *thither, to that place*.
 eōdem, adv., *to the same place*.
 epistula, ae, f., *letter*.
 eques, itis, m., *horseman; pl., cavalry*.
 equester, tris, tre, *equestrian, cavalry (adjective)*.
 equitātus, ūs, m., *cavalry*.
 equus, ī, m., *horse*.
 ergō, adv., *therefore*.
 errō, āre, āvī, ātus, *err, am mistaken*.
 error, ōris, m., *wandering, mistake*.
 ērudiō, īre, īvī, or īī, ītus, *instruct, teach*.
 ēruptiō, ōnis, f., *sally*.
 esuriō, īre, īvī, *be hungry, suffer hunger*.
 ēsūs, ūs, m., *food*.
 et, conj., *and*, et . . . et, *both . . . and*.
 etiam, *also, even*.
 Eurōpa, ae, f., *Europe*.
 exaudiō, īre, īvī, or īī, ītus, *hearken to*.
 excēdō, ere, cessī, cessūrus, *depart from*.
 excidium, ī, n., *destruction*.
 excitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *stir up, rouse*.
 exeō, īre, īī, exitūrus, *go out, go forth*.
 exercitus, ūs, m., *army*.
 exilium, īī, n., *exile*.
 existimō, āre, āvī, ātus, *think, consider*.
 exitium, ī, n., *destruction*.

exitus, ūs, m., *exit, passage.*
 expallesco, ere, uī, *turn pale.*
 expeditus, a, um, *unencumbered, light-armed.*
 expellō, ere, puli, pulsus, *drive out.*
 experior, irī, pertus sum, *try, test.*
 explorātor, ōris, m., *scout.*
 explorō, āre, āvī, ātus, *examine.*
 exprimō, ere, pressi, pressus, *force out, elicit.*
 expugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *take by storm.*
 exsistō, ere exstiti, exstitum, *arise.*
 exterus, a, um, *outside.*
 extra, prep. with acc., *outside, beyond.*
 extrēmus, a, um, *extreme, end of.*
 exul, ulis, adj., *banished, exiled.*
 exulto, āre, āvī, ātus, *exult, rejoice.*

fābula, ae, f., *story.*
 facile, *easily.*
 facilis, e, *easy.*
 facinus, facinoris, n., *crime.*
 faciō, ere, fēci, factus, *make, do.*
 factiō, ōnis, f., *faction.*
 facultās, ātis, f., *abundance, supply.*
 fāma, ae, f., *report, reputation, fame, renown.*
 faveō, ēre, favī, fautus, *favor, be well disposed.*
 familiāris, e, *intimate, familiar.*
 famulus, ī, m., *servant, attendant.*
 favilla, ae, f., *ashes.*
 fel, fellis, n., *bile, bitterness.*
 fēlix, fēlicis, *fortunate, happy.*
 fēmina, ae, f., *woman.*
 ferax, ferācis, *fertile.*
 ferē, *almost, about, practically.*
 ferrum, ī, n., *iron, sword.*
 festinō, āre, āvī, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*
 festus, a, um, *solemn, festive.*
 fidēs, ēi, f., *fidelity, loyalty.*
 fidūcia, ae, f., *confidence.*
 filia, ae, f., *daughter.*
 filius, ī (ii), m., *son.*
 finiō, ire, ivī or ii, itus, *limit, bound, end.*

finis, is, m., *end, boundary*; in pl., *territory*.
firmitās, ātis, f., *firmness, strength*.
firmō, āre, āvī, ātus, *make firm, strengthen*.
firmus, a, um, *steadfast, strong*.
flāgitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand*.
flamma, ae, f., *blaze, flame*.
fleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *weep*.
flētus, us, m., *weeping*.
flōreō, ēre, ui, *flourish, bloom, thrive*.
flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.
flūmen, inis, n., *river*.
fluvius, ī (īī), m., *river*.
foedus, ēris, n., *league, treaty, compact*.
forma, ae, f., *shape, appearance, beauty*.
fortis, f, *brave, courageous*.
fortiter, *bravely*.
fortitūdo, inis, f., *strength, bravery*.
fortūna, ae, f., *fortune*.
forum, ī, n., *market-place*.
fossa, ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
frangō, ere, frēgī, fractus, *break, shiver*.
frāter, tris, m., *brother*.
frons, tis, f., *garland, chaplet*.
fructus, ūs, m., *fruit* (especially of trees).
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain*.
fruor, fruī, fructus sum, *enjoy, delight in*.
frustrā, adv., *in vain*.
fuga, ae, f., *flight*.
fugiō, ere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee*.
fugitivus, a, um, *fugitive*; fugitīvus (as noun), *a fugitive*.
fugō, āre, āvī, ātus, *put to flight*.
fulgeō, ēre, fulsī, ———, *flash, shine*.
fulgidus, a, um, *flashing, glittering*.
fulgor, ōris, m., *lightning, brightness, glory*.
fungor, fungī, functus sum, *perform, execute*.
furor, ōris, m., *rage, fury*.

Galba, ae, m., *Galba* (a man's name).

Gallī, ōrum, m. pl., *Gauls*.

Gallia, ae, f., *Gaul*.

Gallus, ī, m., *a Gaul*.

gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus sum, *rejoice, delight in.*
 gaudium, ī, n., *joy.*
 gemō, ere, uī, itus, *moan.*
 Genava, ae, f., *Geneva, a town of the Allobroges.*
 genitrix, icis, f., *mother.*
 gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.*
 genus, eris, n., *race, kind.*
 Germānī, ōrum, m. pl., *Germans.*
 gerō, ere, gessi, gestus, *carry on, perform; with bellum, to wage.*
 gladius, ī (iī), m., *sword.*
 glōria, ae, f., *glory.*
 gracilis, e, *slender.*
 Graeci, ōrum, m. pl., *Greeks.*
 grātia, ae, f., *grace, favor, thanks.*
 grātus, a, um, *pleasing, welcome.*
 gravis, e, *heavy, grievous, serious.*
 gravitās, ātis, f., *heaviness, violence.*

habeō, ēre, uī, itus, *have, possess.*
 habitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *dwelt, reside.*
 Haedui, ōrum, m. pl., *Haedui, a Gallic tribe.*
 hasta, ae, f., *spear.*
 Helvētīi, ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii, a Celtic tribe.*
 Hēva, ae, f., *Eve.*
 hiberna, ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.*
 Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*
 Hiberus, ī, m., *Hiberus, a river in Spain.*
 hīc, *here, at this place.*
 hīc, haec, hōc, *this.*
 hiemō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pass the winter.*
 hiems, is, f., *winter.*
 Hispania, ae, f., *Spain.*
 historia, ae, f., *a narrative of past events, history.*
 hodiē, *today.*
 homo, inis, m., *man.*
 honor, ōris, m., *honor.*
 honōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *respect, honor.*
 hōra, ae, f., *hour.*
 hortor, āri, ātus sum, *exhort.*
 hortus, ī, m., *garden.*
 hostia, ae, f., *victim.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy.*

hūc, adv., *hither.*

hūmānus, a, um, *human.*

humilis, e, *low, humble.*

iaceō, ēre, uī, itus, *lie.*

iam, adv., *now, already, nōn iam, no more, no longer.*

ibi, adv., *there, in that place.*

īdem, eadem, idem, *the same.*

ideō, adv., *on that account, therefore.*

Iēsus, u, m., *Jesus.*

idōneus, a, um, *suitable.*

ignāvia, ae, f., *cowardice.*

ignāvus, a, um, *cowardly.*

ignis, is, f., *fire.*

ignōminia, ae, f., *disgrace, infamy.*

ignoscō, ere, nōvī, nōtus, *pardon, excuse.*

ille, illa, illud, *that.*

imber, imbris, m., *rainstorm.*

immensus, a, um, *immeasurable, boundless.*

immortālis, e, *immortal.*

impedimentum, i, n., *hindrance; plural, baggage.*

impediō, īre, īvī (īi), itus, *impede, hinder.*

impendeō, ēre, ———, ———, *overhang, threaten.*

imperātor, ōris, m., *commander.*

imperitus, a, um, *inexperienced.*

imperium, ī, n., *rule, command.*

imperō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*

impetus, ūs, m., *onset, attack.*

implōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *entreat.*

impūne, adv., *with impunity.*

in, into; prep. with acc.

in, in, on, prep. with abl.

in animō habeō, I have in mind, intend.

incarnātiō, ōnis, f., *incarnation.*

incendium, ī, n., *fire, conflagration.*

incendō, ere, cendī, census, *set on fire.*

incertus, a, um, *uncertain.*

incipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *begin.*

incitō, āre, āvī, ātus, *urge on, encourage.*

incola, ae, m., *inhabitant.*

incolō, ere, uī, cultus, inhabit.

incolumis, e, unharmed.

incommodum, ī, n., disaster.

inde, adv., thence, thereupon.

indignus, a, um, unworthy.

indulgentia, ae, f., pardon.

indulgēō, ēre, indulgī, indultus, be kind, indulge in (a thing).

ineō, īre, īī, itus, enter upon; consilium inīre, form a plan.

inferior, ius, inferior.

inferō, ferre, tulī, illātus, bring upon.

inferus, a, um, below.

infestus, a, um, hostile, dangerous.

īnfirmus, a, um, weak.

infundō, ere, fūdī, fūsum, pour in, pour upon.

ingemiscō, ere, uī, ———, groan, sigh over.

ingenium, ī, n., talent, natural disposition.

inimicus, ī, an enemy (personal enemy as opposed to *hostis*, a public enemy).

initium, ī, n., beginning. initiō, in the beginning, at first.

iniuria, ae, f., injury.

inopia, ae, f., lack, need.

inquam, ———, ———, ———, say.

īnsidiae, ārum, f. pl., ambush, plot.

īnstitūtum, ī, n., institution.

īnstō, āre, āvī, ātus, press on.

īnstruō, ere, strūxī, strūctus, fit out.

īnstruō, ere, ūxī, ūctus, draw up, arrange.

īnsula, ae, f., island.

īntelligō, ere, lēxī, lēctus, know, understood.

inter, prep. with acc., among, between, in the midst of.

inter sē dare, to exchange, give each other.

īnterimō, ere, ēmī, emptus, destroy, kill.

īnterclūdō, ere, clūsī, clūsus, cut off, hinder.

īntereā, adv., in the meanwhile.

īntereō, īre, īī, itūrus, perish.

īnterest, it concerns.

īnterficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, kill.

īnterim, in the meanwhile.

īnterior, ius, inner.

īnteritus, ūs, m., ruin, destruction.

īntersum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be present, at.

intrā, *within*, prep. with acc.

intrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *walk in, enter.*

inultus, a, um, *unavenged, not vindicated.*

inveniō, **īre**, **vēnī**, **ventus**, *find, come upon.*

invidia, ae, f., *envy.*

invītus, a, um, *unwilling, reluctant.*

Iōannis, is, m., *John.*

ipse, a, um, *self.*

īra, ae, f., *anger, wrath.*

is, ea, id, *that; he, she, it, they* (pl.).

iste, a, ud, *that* (of yours).

ita, *thus, so.*

itaque, *and thus, therefore.*

Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*

iter, **itineris**, n., *journey, march.*

iterum, *again, a second time.*

iubeō, **ēre**, **iussī**, **iussus**, *order.*

iūcundus, a, um, adj., *agreeable, pleasant, delightful.*

iūdex, **icis**, m., *judge.*

iūdicō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *judge, adjudge.*

iugum, ī, n., *yoke; ridge* (of mountains).

iūmentum, i, n., *beasts of burden.*

iungō, **ere**, **iunxī**, **iunctum**, *join; foedus iungō, form an alliance; amicitiam iungō, make friendship.*

iūrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *swear, take oath.*

iūs, **iūris**, n., *right, power.*

iūs iūrandum; gen. **iūris iūrandī**, n., *oath.* (Each word is declined separately.)

iustitia, ae, f., *justice.*

iūstus, a, um, *just, lawful, true.*

iuvenis, is, m., *young man.*

Kalendae, **ārum**, g., *Kalends* (first of the month).

labor, **ōris**, m., *labor.*

labōrō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *work, suffer.*

laccessō, **ere**, **laccessivī**, **laccessitus**, *harass.*

lacrimae, **ārum**, f. pl., *tears.*

laedō, **ere**, **laesī**, **laesus**, *hurt, injure.*

laetitia, ae, f., *joy, gladness.*

laetō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātus**, *delight, cheer.*

laetus, a, um, *glad, joyful, delightful.*

- lapīs, idis, m., *stone*.
 lassus, a, um, *faint, weary*.
 lateō, ēre, uī, ———, *lurke, be hidden*.
 latro, latrōnis, m., *robber, highwayman*.
 lātus, a, um, *broad*.
 latus, eris, n., *side, flank*.
 laudābilis, e, *praiseworthy, laudable*.
 laudō, āre, āvī, ātus, *praise*.
 laus, laudis, f., *praise*.
 lēgātiō, ōnis, f., *embassy*.
 lēgātus, ī, m., *lieutenant, envoy*.
 legiō, ōnis, f., *legion*.
 lēniō, īre, īvī, or īi, itus, *mollify, mitigate*.
 lēnis, e, *soft, mild, gentle*.
 levāmen, inis, n., *solace, consolation*.
 levis, e, *light*.
 lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.
 libenter, *willingly, with pleasure*.
 liber, era, erum, *free*.
 liberī, ōrum (um), m. pl., *children (free born)*.
 liberō, āre, āvī, ātus, *set free*.
 libertās, tātis, f., *liberty*.
 lignum, ī, n., *wood*.
 licet, licēre, licuit, impers., *it is permitted*.
 litterae, ārum, f., *a letter, literature*.
 litus, oris, n., *shore*.
 locus, ī, m., *place, spot*.
 longē, adv., *far*.
 longus, a, um, *long*.
 loquax, ācis, *talkative, loquacious*.
 loquor, ī, locūtus sum, *speak*.
 lūceō, ēre, lūxī, ———, *shine*.
 lūcidus, a, um, *bright, shining*.
 luctus, ūs, m., *mourning*.
 lūdibrium, ī, n., *mockery, sport; habeō in lūdebriō, deride, mock*.
 ludus, ī, m., *play, game*.
 lūna, ae, f., *moon*.
 lux, lūcis, m., *light*.
 luxūria, ae, f., *extravagance, luxury*.
 Magdalēna, ae, f., *Magdalene*.
 magis, *more, rather; comp. of magnopere*.

magister, trī, m., *master, teacher.*
magnificentia, ae, f., *grandeur, splendor, greatness.*
magistrātus, ūs, m., *magistrate.*
magnitūdo, inis, f., *size, extent.*
magnopere, *greatly, earnestly.*
magnus, a, um, *large, great.*
māiestas, ātis, f., *grandeur, majesty.*
maiōrēs, um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
maledictus, a, um, *accursed.* As subst., **maledictum, i., n.,** *a curse.*
mālō, mälle, māluī, ———, *be more willing, prefer.*
mandātum, ī, n., *command, order.*
mandō, āre, āvi, ātus, *assign.*
maneō, ēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain.*
manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force (of troops).*
mare, is, n., *sea.*
margarīta, ae, f., *pearl.*
Marīa, ae, f., *Mary.*
maritimus, a, um, *of the sea, maritime.*
Massilia, ae, f., *Marseille.*
Māter, tris, f., *mother.*
mātūrus, a, um, *right, proper, speedy.*
maximē, *especially; sup. of magnopere.*
medicīna, ae, f., *remedy, cure.*
medius, a, um, *middle, middle of.*
melior, ius, *better, comp. of bonus.*
meminī, meminisse, *remember.*
memor, oris, *mindful.*
memoria, ae, f., *memory, recollection.*
memorō, āre, āvi, ātus, *call to mind, in pass. voice, remember.*
mendācium, ī, n., *lie.*
mens, mentis, f., *heart, mind.*
mensis, is, m., *a month.*
mereor, ēri, meritus sum, *deserve.*
messis, is, f., *harvest.*
metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*
meus, a, um, *my.*
Michāel, ēlis, m., *Michael.*
migrō, āre, āvi, ātus, *go, move, wander.*
mihi est in animō, *I have in mind, intend.*
mīles, itis, m., *soldier.*
mīlitāris, e, *military.*

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful, marvellous.*
misceō, ēre, uī, **mixtus**, *mix, mingle.*
miser, a, um, *wretched, unfortunate.*
misereor, ērī, itus sum, *pity, have mercy on.*
miseret, **miserēre**, **miseritum est**, *impers., it excites pity.*
misericordia, ae, f., *pity.*
misericors, cordis, adj., *merciful.*
mittō, ere, misī, **missus**, *send.*
modestia, ae, f., *moderation, modesty.*
modo, *just, just now.*
modus, ī, m., *manner, kind.*
moestitia, ae, f., *sorrow, grief.*
moestus, a, um, *dejected, melancholy.*
moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *advise, warn.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
mora, ae, f., *delay.*
morbus, ī, m., *illness, sickness, disease.*
morior, Irī, **moritūrus**, *die.*
moror, ārī, ātus sum, *tarry, delay.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.*
mortuus, a, um, perf. part. of **morior**, *die.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom; pl., manners.*
mōtus, ūs, m., *revolt.*
moveō, ēre, mōvī, **mōtus**, *move.*
mox, *soon.*
mulier, eris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, dinis, f., *multitude.*
multus, a, um, *much; pl., many.*
mundus, ī, m., *the world, earth.*
mūniō, ire, īvī, itus, *fortify.*
mūnitiō, onis, f., *fortification.*
mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*
mūsa, ae, f., *muse (goddess).*
mūtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *change, alter.*
mūnus, eris, n., *duty, favor, gift.*
myrrha, ae, f., *myrrh.*

nanciscor, ī, **nactus sum**, *procure.*
narrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *relate, tell.*
nāscor, ī, **nātus sum**, *be born.*
nātālis, is, m., *a birthday.*

nātiō, ōnis, f., *nation, tribe.*

nātīvitas, tātis, f., *birth, nativity.*

nātūra, ae, f., *nature.*

nātus, a, um, perf. part. of nascor, *born.*

nauta, ae, m., *sailor.*

nāvālis, e, *naval.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship.*

-ne, enclitic interrogative particle, attached to emphatic word, and expecting either a negative or affirmative answer.

nē, not.

nē, lest, that . . . not.

nē . . . quidem, *not even;* emphasizes the expression placed between the **nē** and the **quidem**.

necesse est, it is necessary.

nēcō, āre, āvī, ātus, *murder, kill.*

neglegō, ere, ēxī, ēctus, *neglect.*

negōtium, ī (īi), n., *business.*

nēmō, m., no one, dat., nēminī, acc., nēminem; gen. and abl., not used.

neque (nec), nor.

nilil, indecl. n., *nothing.*

nihilō, abl., *by nothing.*

nīl, nihil, or nihilum, m., *indeed, nothing.*

nimis, adv., *too much, excessively.*

nisi, unless.

nītescō, ere, nītuī, ———, *glitter, shine.*

nōbilis, e, *noble.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *injure, harm.*

nocturnus, a, um, at night.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ———, *be unwilling, will not.*

nōmen, inis, n., *name.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōndum, not yet.

nōnne, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'yes.'

nōnnūllus, a, um, some.

noster, tra, trum, our; nostrī, our men.

novus, a, um, new.

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

nūdus, a, um, bare, naked.

num, interrogative particle expecting the answer 'no;' in indirect questions, *whether.*

numerus, i, m., number.

numquam, never.

nunc, now, temporal adv.

nūntiō, āre, āvī, ātus, announce.

nūntius, i (ii), m., messenger.

ob, on account of, prep. with acc.

oblīvīscor, i, oblitus sum, forget.

obscurō, āre, āvī, ātus, darken, obscure.

obses, idis, m., hostage.

obsideō, ēre, sēdī, sessus, blockade.

obsidiō, ōnis, f., siege.

obstupus, a, um, bent, perverse.

obtemperō, āre, āvī, ātus, obey.

obtineō, ēre, uī, tentus, occupy, hold.

occāsiō, ōnis, f., occasion, opportunity.

occidō, ere, cīdī, cīsus, kill.

occupō, āre, āvī, ātus, take possession of, occupy.

ōcior, ius, swifter.

oculus, i, m., eye.

ōdī, ōdisse, hate.

odium, i, n., hatred.

officium, i, n., duty.

ōmen, inis, n., foreboding.

omnīnō, adv., altogether, at all.

omnipotēns, gen., ntis, almighty.

omnis, e, all, every.

opera, ae, f., assistance.

opīniō, ōnis, f., opinion, expectation.

oportet, oportere, oportuit, impers., it is fitting.

oppidānus, i, m., inhabitant of a town, townsman.

oppidum, i, n., town, walled town.

opportūnus, a, um, fit, opportune.

opprimō, ere, pressī, pressus, overwhelm.

oppugnātiō, ōnis, f., siege.

oppugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, I attack, assault.

ops, opis, f., power, help; in pl., resources. Nom. sing. is not 'used.

optō, āre, āvī, ātus, desire.

opus, eris, n., work, labor.

opus est, it is necessary.

ōra, ae, f., coast.

ōrātio, ōnis, f., *speech, oration.*
ōrātor, ōris, m., *orator, envoy.*
ordo, inis, m., *order, rank or line (of soldiers).*
ornāmentum, i, n., *ornament, decoration.*
ornātus, ūs, m., *ornament, dress.*
ōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, pray, ask, request.
ostendō, ere, dī, sum, show.
ōtium, ī, n., *leisure, idleness.*
ovis, is, f., *sheep.*

pābulum, ī, n., *forage.*
paene, almost, nearly.
paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit, impers., it causes regret.
pāgus, ī, m., *district, village.*
palūs, lūdis, f., *marsh.*
pār, paris, equal.
parātus, a, um, ready, prepared.
parcō, ere, pepercī, parsūrus, spare.
pariēs, etis, m., *wall.*
parō, I prepare, get ready.
pars, partis, f., *part.*
parsīmōnia, ae, f., *economy.*
parum, adv., *little.*
parvus, a, um, small.
passiō, ōnis, f., *suffering, passion.*
passus, ūs, m., *pace (five feet).*
pateō, ēre, patuī, lie open.
pater, tris, m., *father.*
patibulum, ī, n., *gibbet.*
patior, ī, passus sum, suffer.
patria, ae, f., *native country, fatherland.*
patrōnus, ī, m., *protector, defender.*
paucī, ae, a, few, used only in pl.
paucitās, ātis, f., *fewness, small number.*
paullātim, little by little, gradually.
paulō, abl., *by a little.*
paulum, adv., *a little.*
Paulus, ī, m., *Paul.*
pauper, eris, poor.
paupertas, ātis, f., *poverty.*
pāx. pācis, f., *peace.*

peccātor, ōris, m., *sinner*.
 peccātum, ī, n., *sin*.
 peccō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transgress, sin*.
 pecūnia, ae, f., *money*.
 pedes, itis, m., *foot-soldier*; in pl., *infantry*.
 peditātus, ūs, m., *infantry*.
 pellō, erē, pepulī, pulsus, *rout, defeat*.
 pendeō, ēre, pependī, ———, *hang down, depend*.
 per, *through, by means of*, prep. with acc.
 peragō, ere, ēgī, actus, *finish, accomplish*.
 perdō, ere, didī, ditus, *lose*.
 perdūcō, ere, xī, ctus, *bring, guide*.
 perennis, e, *unceasing, perpetual*.
 perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *carry through, convey; endure*.
 perficiō, ere, fēcī, fectus, *accomplish*.
 perfodiō, ere, fōdī, fossus, *pierce through, transfix*.
 perfuga, ae, m., *deserter*.
 periculōsus, a, um, *dangerous*.
 periculum, ī, n., *danger*.
 permittō, ere, mīsī, missus, *permit*.
 permoveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *influence, arouse*.
 perniciēs, ēī, f., *destruction, ruin*.
 perpaucus, a, um, *very little, very few*.
 perpetuus, a, um, *perpetual*.
 persequor, ī, secūtus sum, *follow up*.
 persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsus, *persuade*.
 perterreō, ēre, uī, itus, *terrify*.
 perturbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *agitate, disturb*.
 perveniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come, arrive*.
 pēs, pedis, m., *foot*.
 petō, ere, ivī (iī), itus, *seek, request*.
 Petrus, ī, m., *Peter*.
 pietās, ātis, f., *affection, piety*.
 piger, ra, rum, *unwilling, lazy*.
 pigritia, ae, f., *sluggishness, laziness, idleness*.
 piget, *it disgusts*.
 pius, a, um, *pious*.
 placeō, ēre, uī, placitūrus, *please*.
 placō, āre, āvī, ātus, *reconcile, pacify*.
 planitiēs, ēī, f., *plain*.
 plāga, ae, f., *wound*.

planctus, ūs, m., *wailing, lamentation.*

plangō, ere, xī, ctus, *beat, strike.*

plaudō, ere, sī, sus, *strike, applaud.*

plēbs, is, f., *common people.*

plēnus, a, um, *full.*

plērique, aequē, aque, *most.*

plōrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *weep.*

plūs, comparative of **multus**.

poēma, ātis, n., *a composition in verse, a poem.*

poena, ae, f., *punishment, penalty.*

poēta, ae, m., *poet.*

polliceor, ērī, itus sum, *promise.*

Pompeius, Pompei, m., *Pompey, a man's name.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *place, lay aside.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

pōnō, ere, posuī, positus, *put, place, establish.*

Pontius Pilātus, Pontius Pilate, governor of Judaea, in the time of Christ.

populus, ī, m., *people.*

porta, ae, f., *gate.*

portō, āre, āvī, ātus, *carry, bring, convey.*

portus, ūs, m., *harbor.*

possessiō, ōnis, f., *possession.*

post, adv., *afterwards.*

post, *after*, prep. with acc.

porteā, afterwards, later on.

posterus, a, um, *following.*

postquam, *after*, conjunction.

postrēmō, adv., *at last, in the end.*

postulō, āre, āvī, ātus, *demand.*

potentia, ae, f., *power.*

potestās, ātis, f., *power, opportunity.*

potior, potiri, potitus sum, *take possession of, acquire.*

pōtō, āre, āvī, ātus, *drink.*

praebeō, ēre, uī, itus, *grant, give, offer.*

praecipio, ere, cēpī, ceptus, *enjoin.*

praeclārus, a, um, *splendid, grand.*

praeco, ōnis, m., *crier, herald.*

praeda, ae, f., *booty.*

praedō, ōnis, m., *robber.*

praeicio, ere, fēcī, fectus, *put in charge.*

- praemittō, ere, mīsi, missus, *send ahead, dispatch.*
 praemium, ī, n., *reward.*
 praesepium, īi, n., *crib, manger.*
 praesidium, ī, n., *garrison.*
 praestat, *it is better.*
 praestō, āre, āvi, ātus, *perform, make, surpass.*
 praesum, esse, fui, futūrus, *be in charge of.*
 praetereā, *besides.*
 praetor, ōris, m., *praetor.*
 precor, āri, ātus, *pray, beseech.*
 premō, ere, pressi, pressus, *press, crowd.*
 pretiōsus, a, um, *valuable, precious.*
 prex, precis, f., *a prayer, entreaty.*
 primō, *first, firstly.*
 princeps, cipis, m., *chief.*
 principium, īi, n., *beginning.*
 prior, us, *former, before.*
 pristinus, a, um, *pristine, former, early.*
 privātus, a, um, *private.*
 prō, prep. with abl., *before, in front of; instead of; in behalf of; in accordance with.*
 probō, āre, āvi, ātus, *approve.*
 probus, a, um, *good, honest, virtuous.*
 prōcēdō, ere, cessi, cessūrus, *advance.*
 procul, adv., *far, afar off.*
 prōcurrō, ere, cucurri, cursum, *run forward.*
 prōdigium, īi, n., *unusual sign, foreboding, prodigy.*
 prōditiō, ōnis, f., *betrayal, treason.*
 proelium, ī (īi), n., *battle.*
 profero, ferre, tuli, lātus, *bring forth.*
 proficiscor, ī, fectus sum, *set out.*
 profugiō, ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, *flee, escape.*
 prōgredior, ī, gressus sum, *advance, go forward.*
 prohibeō, ēre, uī, itus, *keep off, keep away (transitive).*
 prōiciō, ere, iēcī, iectus, *throw, cast.*
 prōmissio, ōnis, f., *promise.*
 prope, *near.*
 properō, āre, āvi, ātus, *hasten, hurry.*
 propior, ius, *nearer.*
 propitius, a, um, *favorable, gracious.*
 propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

protēnus, *forthwith, straightway.*
 prōvideō, ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *provide, take care.*
 prōvincia, ae, f., *province.*
 proximus, a, um, *nearest, next.*
 prūdēns, entis, *skilled, wise.*
 prūdētia, ae, f., *prudence.*
 pūblicus, a, um, *public.*
 pudet, *it shames.*
 puella, ae, f., *girl.*
 puer, ī, m., *boy.*
 pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle.*
 pugnō, āre, āvī, ātus, *fight.*
 pulcher, chra, chrum, *beautiful, pretty.*
 pulchritūdo, inis, f., *beauty.*
 pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*
 putō, āre, āvī, ātus, *believe, think, consider.*

quā, *where?*
 quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *inquire.*
 quamquam, *although.*
 quandō, *when?*
 quantus, a, um, *how much, how great?*
 quārē, adv., *wherefore, why?*
 quasi, adv., *as if, like.*
 -que, *and, enclitic, conjunction.*
 quercus, ūs, f., *oak.*
 quī, quae, quod, *who, which.*
 quīdam, quaedam, quiddam or quoddam, *a certain.*
 quia, conj., *because.*
 quīa, *but that.*
 quinque, num. adj., *five.*
 quis, quid, interr. pron., *who, what?*
 quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), *any, any one.*
 quisque, quaeque, quidque (quicque), *each.*
 quisquis, quaeque, quodquod, subst. quicquid, quidquid, pron.
 rel., *whoever, whatever.*
 quō, *in order that; regularly used when followed by a comparative.*
 quō, *whither, interrogative and relative adv.*
 quod, *because.*
 quōminus, *from (only with verbs of hindering).*
 quondam, *formerly.*

quoniam, *inasmuch as*, conj.
quoque, *also*, always follows the word it modifies.
quum, see **cum**.

ratio, **ōnis**, f., *reason*.
recēdō, ere, **recessī**, **recessum**, go back, retreat.
recēns, **recentis**, *recent*.
receptus, **ūs**, m., *a drawing back, retreat*.
recipiō, ere, **cēpī**, **ceptus**, *take back*; with reflexive **sē**, to retreat.
recordō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *recollect, remember*.
recūsō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *refuse*.
reddō, ere, **reddidī**, **redditus**, *return, give back; render*.
redeō, ire, **ii**, **itūrus**, *return*.
redimō, ere, **ēmī**, **emptus**, *buy back, redeem*.
redivivus, a, um, *that lives again, renewed*.
regnō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *rule, reign*.
redūcō, ere, **dūxī**, **ductus**, *lead back*.
referō, ferre, **rettuli**, **relātus**, *bring back*.
refugium, ī, n., *refuge*.
rēgīna, ae, f., *queen*.
regiō, **ōnis**, f., *region*.
rēgnum, ī, n., *kingdom*.
regō, ere, **rēxī**, **rectus**, *rule*.
reiciō, ere, **reiēcī**, **reiectus**, *hurl back*.
relinquō, ere, **liquī**, **lictus**, *leave, leave behind*.
reliquus, a, um, *remaining*.
remaneō, ēre, **mānsī**, **mānsūrus**, *remain*.
remigrō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *go back*.
reminiscor, ī, *remember*.
remissio, **ōnis**, f., *remission*.
renovō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *renew*.
renūntiō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *bring back word, report*.
repellō, ere, **reppulī**, **repulsus**, *drive back, repel*.
repentinus, a, um, *sudden*.
reperiō, ire, **repperī**, **repertus**, *discover*.
rēs, **rēi**, f., *thing*.
rēs, **pūblica**, gen., **reī pūblicae**, f., *state, republic*.
rescindō, ere, **scidī**, **sciissus**, *tear down*.
resistō, ere, **restiti**, *resist*.
resonō, āre, **āvī**, **ātus**, *resound, reecho*.
respiciō, ere, **spexī**, **spectus**, *look back, look about*.

respondeō, ēre, spondī, spōnsus, answer, reply.

respōnsum, ī, n., answer.

restituō, ere, uī, ūtus, restore.

resurgō, surgere, surrexī, surrectus, rise again.

resurrectio, ōnis, f., resurrection.

retineō, ēre, uī, tentus, retain.

reus, ī, m., defendant, prisoner.

revertor, ī, reversus sum, return.

rēx, rēgis, m., king.

Rhēnus, ī, m., the Rhine.

Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone.

rīpa, ae, f., bank (of a river).

risus, ūs, m., laughter.

rītus, ūs, m., religious ceremony, rite.

rogō, āre, āvī, ātus, ask.

Rōma, ae, f., Rome.

Rōmānus, a, um, Roman; ———, as noun, m., a Roman.

rōsa, ae, f., rose.

rubeō, ēre, ———, ———, grow red, blush.

rūrsus, again.

Saba, ae, f., Saba, the largest town in Arabia Felix, noted for its frankincense, myrrh, etc.

sacrificium, ī, n., sacrifice.

sacrōsanctus, a, um, inviolable, sacred.

saeculum, see saeculum.

saeculum, ī, n., race, generation.

saepe, adv., often, frequently.

saevitās, ātis, f., rage, fury.

sagitta, ae, f., arrow.

saltō, āre, āvī, ātus, dance.

salūs, ūtis, f., safety.

salutō, āre, āvī, ātus, greet.

salvātor, ōris, m., saviour, preserver.

salvē, imperative 2d sing. of *salveō*, -ēre, be well, hail.

salvō, āre, āvī, ātus, save.

salvus, a, um, safe, sound.

sanctus, a, um, sacred, holy.

sanguis, inis, m., blood.

sapiens, entis, wise.

sapientia, ae, f., wisdom.

satis, *enough*, indecl.

scēna, ae, f., *stage, scene*.

schola, ae, f., *school*.

sciō, īre, scīvī, scītus, *know*.

scribō, ere, scripsī, scriptus, *write*; of laws, *draw up*.

scūtum, ī, n., *shield*.

sē, reflexive, *he, himself, herself, themselves*.

secrētum, ī, n., *secret, mystery*.

sēcūrus, a, um, *free from care, untroubled*.

sed, conj., *but*.

sedeō, ēre, sedī, sessum, *sit*.

sedile, is, n., *seat*.

sēditio, ōnis, f., *uprising, revolt, rebellion*.

sēmen, inis, n., *seed*.

semper, adv., *always, ever*.

senātus, ūs, m., *senate*.

senectus, ūtis, f., *old age, senility*.

sententia, ae, f., *opinion*.

sentiō, īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *feel*.

septingentī, ae, a, *seven hundred*.

sepulchrum, ī, n., *burial place, grave*.

sepultus, a, um, perf. part. of **sepeliō**, *bury*.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. pl., *Sequani, a tribe of Gaul*.

sequestrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *remove, separate*.

sequor, ī, secūtus sum, *seek, follow*.

serēnus, a, um, *fair, clear, bright*.

sermō, ōnis, m., *conversation*.

serpens, entis, m., *snake, serpent*.

servitūs, ūtis, f., *servitude, bondage*.

servō, āre, āvī, ātus, *keep, save, preserve*.

servus, ī, m., *slave, servant*.

sescentī, ae, a, *six hundred*.

sī, *if*.

Sibylla, ae, f., *a prophetess, Sibyl*.

sic, so, *in this way*.

sicut, adv., *just as, as*.

signa inferō, *charge* (literally, *bear the standards against*).

signum, ī, n., *sign, standard*.

silentium, īi, n., *silence*.

silva, ae, f., *forest*.

similis, e, *like*.

Simo, ōnis, m., *Simon.*

simul, together, at the same time.

simul ac (atque), as soon as.

sine, without, prep. with abl.

sinister, tra, trum, left.

sitiō, ire, ivi, or iī, ———, be thirsty, suffer thirst.

societās, ātis, f., association, alliance.

socius, ī (iī), m., comrade, ally, companion.

sōl, sōlis, m., sun.

sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātus, rouse, instigate.

solvō, ere, solvi, solūtus, loose, of ships, unmoor; nāvēs solvere,

set sail.

sonitus, ūs, m., noise, sound, din.

sonus, ī, m., noise, sound.

soror, ōris, f., sister.

spargō, ere, si, sus, scatter, hurl.

spatium, ī, n., space, time, opportunity.

spectō, āre, āvi, ātus, behold, see.

spērō, āre, āvi, ātus, hope, hope for.

spēs, spei, f., hope.

spīritus, ūs, m., a breath, spirit.

statim, at once, immediately.

statuō, ere, uī, ūtus, decide.

stella, ae, f., star.

stricte, adv., rigidly, strictly.

studeō, ēre, uī, ———, be eager for (with dative); novīs rēbus

studēre, to be eager for a revolution.

stultitia, ae, f., folly.

stultus, a, um, foolish, silly.

stupeō, ēre, uī, ———, be astonished, be amazed.

suāvis, e, sweet, pleasant, agreeable.

sub, under, prep. with abl.

subdūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus, withdraw.

subeō, ire, iī, itūrus, approach.

subitō, suddenly.

sublevō, āre, āvi, ātus, relieve.

submitto, ere, mīsi, missus, send, despatch.

subsidiū, ī, n., assistance.

suffrāgium, ī, n., assent, approbation.

sum, esse, fui, futūrus, be.

sūmō, ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, take.

superbia, ae, f., *haughtiness, pride, insolence.*

superbus, a, um, *haughty, proud, insolent.*

superior, ius, *higher.*

superō, I *overcome.*

supersum, esse, fui, *remain, be left.*

superus, a, um, *above.*

supplex, icis, adj., *humble, beseeching.*

supplicium, ī, n., *torture, punishment.*

supplicō, āre, āvī, ātus, *pray, implore.*

suspendō, ere, dī, sum, *hang up, suspend.*

suspiciō, ōnis, f., *suspicion.*

suspīrō, āre, āvī, ātus, *sigh.*

sustineō, ēre, sustinui, *withstand.*

suus, a, um, *his, her, its, their.*

taedet, it *wearies.*

talentum, ī, n., *a talent* (not a coin), but a certain number of pounds of gold or silver equivalent to about \$1200.

talis, e, *such.*

tam, so (of degree).

tamen, *nevertheless, yet.*

tangō, ere, tetigī, tactus, *touch.*

tantus, a, um, *so much, so great.*

tardō, āre, āvī, ātus, *retard, check.*

tegō, ere, texi, tectus, *cover.*

tēlum, ī, n., *javelin.*

temere, *rashly.*

tempestās, ātis, f., *weather, storm.*

templum, ī, n., *temple, church.*

temptō, āre, āvī, ātus, *attempt, make trial of.*

tempus, oris, n., *time.*

teneō, ēre, uī, tentus, *hold.*

tergum, ī, n., *back.*

terminus, ī, m., *limit, end.*

terra, ae, f., *land, country.*

terror, ōris, m., *terror, alarm.*

tertius, a, um, *third.*

thronus, ī, m., *throne.*

timeō, ēre, uī, ———, *fear.*

timidus, a, um, *fearful, afraid.*

timor, ōris, m., *fear.*

tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, *lift up, raise up.*

tot, *so many, indecl.*

tōtus, a, um, *the whole, all.*

trādō, ere, didī, ditus, *hand over.*

trādūcō, ere, dūxī, ductus, *lead across.*

trāns, *across, prep. with acc.*

trānscō, īre, īī, itus, *cross.*

transfuga, ae, m., *deserter.*

trānsportō, āre, āvī, ātus, *transport.*

tremō, ere, uī, ———, *shake, tremble.*

tremor, ōris, m., *shaking, tremor.*

tribūnus, ī, m., *tribune.*

tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *grant, give.*

trīduum, ī, n., *three days.*

Trīnitas, ātis, f., *the Trinity.*

trīstis, e, *sad.*

trīstītia, ae, f., *sadness, grief.*

tū, tuī, *thou, you.*

trīumphō, āre, āvī, ātus, *celebrate, triumph.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, ērī, ———, ———, *guard, watch.*

Tullia, ae, f., *Tullia, a woman's name.*

tum, *then, at that time.*

tumba, ae, f., *tomb.*

tumultus, ūs, m., *uprising.*

turba, ae, f., *crowd, multitude.*

turbō, āre, āvī, ātus, *embarrass, disturb, trouble.*

turgescō, ere, ———, ———, *swell.*

turpis, e, *base.*

turris, īs, f., *tower.*

tūs, tūris, n., *incense.*

tūtus, a, um, *safe.*

tuus, a, um, *your.*

ubi, adv., *where, when.*

ulterior, ius, comp. adj., *farther.*

umbra, ae, f., *shadow.*

unda, ae, f., *wave.*

ultio, ōnis, f., *vengeance, revenge.*

unde, *whence, wherefore.*

undique, adv., *from all parts or sides.*

- ūnicus, a, um, *only, sole*.
 ūnus, a, um, *one, alone*.
 urbānus, a, um, *of a city, refined*.
 urbs, urbis, f., *city*.
 usque, adv., *as far as, up to*.
 ūsus, ūs, m., *use, service*.
 ūsus militāris, *military experience*.
 ut, *that, in order that*.
 ūtilis, e, *useful*.
 ūtilitās, ātis, f., *advantage*.
 utinam, *affirmative particle*.
 ūtor, ī, ūsus sum, *use*.
 uxor, ōris, f., *wife, consort*.

 vadum, ī, n., *ford*.
 valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *avail, prevail*.
 vallis, is, f., *valley*.
 vāllum, ī, n., *rampart, intrenchment*.
 vāstō, āre, āvī, ātus, *lay waste*.
 vēna, ae, f., *vein*.
 vēndō, ere, vēndidī, vēnditus, *sell*.
 Venetī, ōrum, m. pl., *Veneti, a Gallic tribe*.
 venia, ae, f., *permission, forgiveness*.
 veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, *come*.
 venter, ris, m., *womb*.
 ventus, ī, m., *wind*.
 verbum, ī, n., *word*.
 versor, ārī, ātus sum, *be engaged in*.
 vertō, ere, vertī, versus, *turn; terga vertere, flee*.
 vērus, a, um, *true, genuine*.
 vescor, vescī, ———, *feed, eat*.
 vester, tra, trum, *your*.
 vestimentum, ī, n., *garment*.
 vetus, veteris, *old*.
 vetus, veteris, *old*.
 vexō, āre, āvī, ātus, *I harass, annoy; ravage*.
 via, ae, f., *road, way, street*.
 vicissitūdo, inis, f., *change*.
 victor, is, m., *victor*.
 victōria, ae, f., *victory*.
 vīcus, ī, m., *village*.

videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus, see.
videor, ērī, vīsus sum (passive of **videō**), *be seen; seem.*
vigilia, ae, f., watch (of the night).
vīgintī, twenty, indecl.
vīlitas, ātis, f., cheapness, baseness.
vincō, ere, vīcī, victum, conquer.
vindex, icis, m., avenger, defender.
vinculum, ī, n., bond, fetter.
vir, ī, m., man.
virgo, inis, f., virgin.
viriditās, ātis, f., green color, freshness, vigor.
virīlis, e, manly, of a man.
virtūs, tūtis, f., valor, virtue.
vīs (vis), f., violence; pl., vīrēs, ium, strength.
vīta, ae, f., life.
vitium, ī, n., fault, vice, mistake.
vītō, I avoid.
vituperō, āre, āvī, ātus, blame.
vīvō, ere, vixī, victus, live.
vīvus, a, um, alive, living.
vix, scarcely, with difficulty.
vocō, āre, āvī, ātus, call.
volō, velle, voluī, ———, be willing, wish, will.
voluptās, ātis, f., pleasure, enjoyment.
vōx, vōcis, f., voice, word.
vulnus, eris, n., wound.
vultur, vulturis, m., vulture.
vultus, ūs, m., expression, look.

English-Latin Vocabulary

- abandon**, dēserō, ere, seruī, sertus.
able, be able, possum, posse, potui.
about, concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
absent, be absent, absum, esse, āfui, āfutūrus.
account, on account of, propter, prep. with acc.
accuse, accūsō, -āre, āvi, -ātus.
across, trāns, prep. with acc.
adjudge, iūdicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātus.
admire, admīror, āri, ātus sum.
advance, prōgredior, ī, gressus sum.
advantage, ūtilitās, ātis, f.
advice, cōsiliū, ī, n.
advise, moneō, ēre, uī, itus.
affair, rēs, rei, f.
after (adv.), post.
after (conj.), postquam.
after, post, prep. with acc.
afterwards, postea.
against, contra, prep. with acc.
aid, auxilium, ī, n.
alarm, terror, ōris, m.
all, omnis, e.
alliance, societas, ātis, f.
ally, socius, ī, m.
almost, paene.
alone, sōlus, a, um; ūnus, a, um.
already, iam.
also, etiam.
although, though, quamquam; quamvis; cum.
always, semper.
ambassador, legātus, ī, m.
ambush, insidiae, ārum, f. pl.
ancestors, maiōrēs, um, m.
and, et; -que (enclitic); atque.
anger, ira, ae, f.
animal, animal, ālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, -āre, āvi, ātus.
another, alius, a, ud.

answer, respondeō, ēre, spondi, spōnsum.

answer, respōnsum, I, n.

any, ūllus, a, um.

anybody, anyone, anything, quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, quis, quid.

any you please, quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet or quodlibet.

appoint, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus; lit., say.

approach, noun, aditus, ūs, m.

approach, verb. appropinquō, āre, āvi, ātus; adeō, ire, ii, itus.

approve, probō, āre, āvi, ātus.

April, Aprīlis, e, adj.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, I, m.

arm, armō, āre, āvi, ātus.

army, exercitus, ūs, m.

army on the march, agmen, minis, m.

arrange, collocō, āre, āvi, ātus.

arrive, perveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.

as long as, dum.

as soon as, simul atque (ac).

ask, rogō, āre, āvi, ātus.

assemble (intransitive), conveniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

assistance, subsidium, I, n.; auxilium, I, n.

at all, omnino, adv.

at hand, be at hand, adsum, esse, adfui, adfuturus.

at once, statim.

Athens, Athēnae, ārum, f.

attack, impetus, ūs, m.

attack, adoriōr, iri, ortus sum.

attack, assault (a town), oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.

attempt, temptō, āre, āvi, ātus.

authority, auctoritās, tātis, f.

auxiliaries, auxilia, ōrum, n. pl.

avoid, vitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

bad, malus, a, um.

band, force (of troops), manus, ūs, f.

barbarian (adj.), barbarus, a, um; (noun), barbarus, I, m.

battle, proelium, I, n.

battle line, aciēs, ei, f.

be, sum, esse, fui, futurus.

be able, possum, posse, potui.

- bear**, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātus.
beast, bestia, ae, f.
beast of burden, iumentum, i, n.
beautiful, pulcher, chra, chrom.
because, quod; quia; cum.
become, fiō, fieri, factus sum.
before, (prep. and adv.), ante.
before, (conj.), antequam, priusquam.
begin, coepi, coepisse.
beginning, initium, i, n.
behoove, it behooves, oportet, ēre, oportuit. .
Belgians, Belgae, arum, m.
believe, crēdō, ere, crēdidī, crēditus.
betake oneself, cōferō, ferre, tuli, collātus, with the reflexive pron.
better, melius.
between, inter, prep. with acc.
black, niger, gra, grum.
blame, culpō, āre, āvi, ātus.
boat, nāvis, is, f.
bold, audax, -ācis.
boldly, audācter, adv.
boldness, audācia, ae, f.
bondage, servitūs, ūtis, f.
booty, praeda, ae, f.
born, be, born, nāscor, i, nātus sum.
born, nātus, a, um.
both, each, uterque, utraque, utrumque.
boundary, finis, is, m.
boy, puer, erī, m.
brave, fortis, e.
bravely, fortiter; from the adj., fortis, e.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
brief, brevis, e.
bring, afferō, ferre, attuli, allatus.
bring about, efficiō, ere, feci, fectus.
bring against, inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus, with dat. of indirect obj.
bring back, referō, ferre, rettuli, relātus.
bring together, cōferō, ferre, tuli, collātus.
bring up, educō, āre, āvi, ātus.
bring upon, inferō, ferre, tuli, illātus.
Britain, Britannia, ae, f.

broad, lātus, a, um.

brother, frāter, tris, m.

building, aedificium, i, n., building.

burn, accendō, ere, dt, sus.

by (of personal agent), a ab, prep. with abl.

Caesar, Caesar, is, m.

calamity, calamitas, tātis, f.

call (name), appellō, āre, āvi, ātus.

call (summon), vocō, āre, āvi, ātus.

call out, clāmō, āre, āvi, ātus.

call together, convocō, āre, āvi, ātus.

camp, castra, ōrum, n.

can (be able), possum, posse, potui.

captive, captivus, i, m.

capture, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.

carry, portō, āre, āvi, ātus.

carry on, gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.

cause, causa, ae, f.

cavalry, equitēs, um, m. pl. of eques, itis; **of cavalry, equestrian**, equester, tris, tre.

cease, desistō, ere, destiti.

certain, certain one, quidam, quaedam, quiddam, or quoddam.

change, mūto, āre, āvi, ātus.

charge, be, in charge, praesum, esse, fui, with dative.

charge, put in charge, praeficiō, ere, feci, fectus, with dat.

check, tardō, āre, āvi, ātus.

chief, princeps, cipis, m.

children, liberi, ōrum (um), m.

choose, deligō, ere, legi, lectus.

circumstance, rēs, ei, f.

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

citizen, fellow-citizen, civis, is, m.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

client, cliens, ntis, m.

coast, ōra, ae, f.

cohort, cohors, rtis, f.

collapse, corruō, ere, ui, ———.

collect, colligō, ere, legi, lectus.

come, veniō, ire, vēni, ventum.

command (noun), mandātum, i, n.

- command** (verb), imperō, āre, avi, ātus.
commander, imperātor, ōris, m.
common, communis, e.
compel, cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus.
conceal, celō, āre, avi, ātus.
concern, it concerns, interest, esse, fuit.
concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
condemn, damnō, āre, avi, ātus.
confer, colloquor, ī, locūtus sum.
conference, colloquium, ī, n.
conflagration, incendium, ī, n.
consider, putō, āre, avi, ātus.
conspiracy, coniūratiō, ōnis, f.
conspire, coniurō, āre, avi, ātus.
consul, cōsul, is, m.
consult (with), dēliberō, āre, avi, ātus.
contend, dīmicō, āre, avi, ātus.
contented, contentus, a, um.
Corinth, Corinthus, ī, m., a city in Greece.
council, concilium, ī, n.
country, terra, ae, f.
country, native country, patria, ae, f.
courage, animus, ī, m. virtūs, ūtis, f.
courageous, fortis, e.
courageously, audācter, from adj. audāx, ācis.
cowardice, ignāvia, ae, f.
cowardly, ignāvus, a, um.
Crassus, Crassus, ī, m.
cross, transeō, īre, īi, itus.
crowd, premō, ere, pressi, pressus.
cry, clāmor, ōris, m.
cross, transeō, īre, īi, itūrus.
crown, corōna, ae, f.
cruel, crūdēlis, e.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.

dance, saltō, āre, avi, ātus.
danger, perīculum, ī, n.
dangerous, perīculōsus, a, um.
dare, audeō, ēre, ausus sum, semi-deponent.
daring, audāx, -ācis, adi.

daring, audācia, ae, f.
daughter, flīa, ae, f.
day, diēs, ei, m.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decide, cōstituō, ere, ui, ūtus.
decree, dēcernō, ere, crēvi, crētus.
deed, rēs, rei, f.
deep, altus, a, um.
defend, dēfendō, ere, fendī, fēsus.
defense, dēfensiō, ōnis, f.
delay, moror, āri, ātus.
delegate, legātus, i, m.
deliberate, dēliberō, āre, āvi, ātus.
delight, delectō, āre, āvi, ātus.
demand, flagitō, āre, āvi, ātus.
depart, excēdō, ere, cessi, cessūrus.
depth, altitudō, inis, f.
desert, dēserō, ere, serui, sertus.
deserter, transfuga, ae, m.
deserve, mereor, ēri, meritus.
desire, wish, optō, āre, āvi, ātus.
desirous, cupidus, a, um.
despair, dēspērō, āre, āvi, ātus.
destroy, deleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus.
destruction, perniciēs, ei, f.
difficult, difficilis, e.
with difficulty, vix.
dignity, dignitās, ātis, f.
disagreement, dissensiō, ōnis, f.
disaster, calamitās, tātis, f.
discover, reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus.
disease, morbus, i, m.
disgrace, ignōminia, ae, f.
disgust, it **disgusts**, piget, pigēre, piguit.
dismiss, dimitto, ere, misi, missus.
dispatch, praemittō, ere, misi, missus.
distant, be **distant**, absum, esse, afui, afutūrus.
disturb, perturbō, āre, āvi, ātus.
ditch, fossa, ae, f.
do, faciō, ere, feci, factus.
doubt, be in **doubt**, dubitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

draw up, instruō, ere, ūxi, ūctus.

drive back, repellō, ere, reppuli, repulsus.

drive out, expellō, ere, puli, pulsus.

Dumnorix, Dumnorix, igitis, m.

dust, pulvis, pulveris, m.

duty, officium, i, n.

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.

each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque.

each other, sūt, sibi, sē; also nōs, vōs, used reflexively.

eager, alacer, alacris, alacre.

eagle, aquila, ae, f.

ear, auris; is, f.

easily, facile, from adj. facilis, e.

easy, facilis, e.

Ebro, Hiberus, i, m., a river in Spain.

eighteen, duodēviginti.

either . . . or, aut . . . aut.

elect, creō, āre, āvi, ātus.

eloquence, eloquentia, ae, f.

else, alius, a, ud.

embankment, rampart, agger, eris, m.

embarrass, turbō, āre, āvi, ātus.

embassy, lēgatiō, ōnis, f.

encourage, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

endeavor, cōnor, āri, ātus sum, dep.

endure, perferō, ferre, tuli, latus.

enemy (in military sense), hostis, is, m; (collectively), hostēs, ium, m.

enemy (personal), inimicus, i, m.

(be) engaged (in), versor, āri, ātus.

envoy, fruor, i, fructus.

enough, satis.

entreat, implōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

envoy, lēgātus, i, m.

envy, invidia, ae, f.

equal, par. Gen. paris.

especially, maximē, adv.

establish, cōfirmō, āre, āvi, ātus.

Europe, Eurōpa, ae, f.

even, etiam.

ever, always, semper.

every, omnis, e.
 evident (it is), constat, stare, stitit.
 examine, explorō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 exchange, inter sē, dare.
 excuse, ignoscō, ere, nōvi, nōtus.
 execute, fungor, i, functus.
 exhaust, wear out, cōnficiō, ere, fēci, fectus.
 expect, exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 extent, magnitūdo, inis, f.
 extravagance, luxūria, ae, f.

 faction, factiō, ōnis, f.
 family (stock), genus, eris, n.
 farmer, agricola, ae, m.
 father, pater, patris, m.
 fatherland, patria, ae, f.
 favor (thanks), grātia, ae, f.
 favor, beneficium, i, n.
 fear (noun), timor, ōris, m.
 fear (verb), timeō, ēre, ui.
 fellow-citizen, civis, is, m.
 fertile, ferāx, ācis.
 few, pauci, ae, a.
 fidelity, fides, -i, f.
 field, ager, agri, m.
 fiercely, acriter; from the adj., ācer, acris, acre.
 fifteen, quindecim.
 fight, pugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
 fill up, compleō, ēre, ēvi, ētus.
 find (by searching), reperiō, ire, repperi, repertus.
 find (come upon), inveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.
 first, adj., primus, a, um.
 first, adv., primum.
 fit out, equip, instruō, ere, uxi, ūctus.
 fitting (it is), decet.
 five, quinque.
 flattery, assentatiō, ōnis, f.
 flee, flee from, fugiō, ere, fugi, fugitūrus.
 fleet, classis, is, f.
 flight, fuga, ae, f.
 flourish, flōreō, ēre, ui, ———.

flower, flos, flōris, m.
follow, sequor, I, secūtus.
(following), on the following day, postridie.
fond, fond of, cupidus, a, um.
foolish, stultus, a, um.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
forage, pābulum, I, n.
force, cōgō, ere, cōgī, cōactus.
ford, vadum, I, n.
forest, silva, ae, f.
forget, obliviscor, I, oblītus sum.
(to) form a plan, consilium Ire.
form an alliance, foedus iungō, ere, iunxī, iunctum.
fortification, mūnitio, ōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, Ire, Ivi, Itus.
fortune, fortūna, ae, f.
fortune (i.e., property), fortūnae, arum, f.
founder, conditor, ōris, m.
four, quattuor.
free (adjective), liber, a, um.
free, set free, liberō, āre, avi, ātus.
frequently, crebrē, adv.
friend, amicus, I, m.
friendship, amicitia, ae, f.
frighten, perterreō, ēre, uī, itus.
from, a, ab.
from, out of, ē, ex.
from (=of), with verbs of demanding, etc., a, ab.
from, after verbs of hindering, etc., quōminus, nē.
front (adj.), primus, a, um.
fury, furor, ōris, m.

Galba, Galba, ae, m.
Gallic, Gallus, a, um.
game, ludus, I, m.
garden, hortus, I, m.
garrison, praesidium, I, n.
gate, porta, ae, f.
Gaul (a Gaul), Gallus, I, m.
Gaul (the country), Gallia, ae, f.
general, imperātor, -ōris, m.

Geneva, Genava, ae, f.
gentle, clēmens, ntis.
German (a German), Germānus, i, m.
Germany, Germānia, ae, f.
general, imperātor, ōris, m.
Germans, Germāni, ōrum, m. pl.
get ready (trans.), parō, āre, avi, ātus.
gift, dōnum, i, n.
girl, puella, ae, f.
give, dō, dare, dedi, datus.
give up, dedō, ere, dedidi, itus.
glad, laetus, a, um.
glorious, amplus, a, um.
glory, glōria, ae, f.
go, eō, ire, ivi (ii), itum.
go around, circumeō, ire, ivi (ii), itus.
go away, abeō, ii, iturus.
go back, remigrō, āre, avi, ātus.
gold, aurum, i, n.
good, bonus, a, um.
grain, frūmentum, i, n.
grandfather, avus, i, m.
great, magnus, a, um.
greatest (of qualities), summus, a, um.
greatly, magnopere.
grief, dolor, ōris, m.
(ground), on the ground that.
guard, cūstōs, ōdis, m. and f.
guard, watch, tueor, eri.

Haedui, Haedui, ōrum, m.
hand over, trādō, ere, didi, ditus.
happen, be done, fiō, fieri, factus sum.
happen, it happens, it befalls, impersonal, accidit, ere, accidit.
happy, beātus, a, um.
harass, vexō, āre, avi, ātus.
harbor, portus, ūs, m.
harm, dētrimentum, i, n.
harvest, messis, is, f.
hasten, properō, āre, avi, ātus.
hate, ōdi, ōdisse.

- have**, habeo, ēre, uī, itus.
he, is (ea, id).
head, caput, itis, n.
hear, hear of, audiō, ire, ivī, Itus.
heart, courage, animus, i, m.
help, auxilium, i, n.
Helvetii, Helvētī, ōrum, m.
her, suus, a, um, reflexive.
herald, praeco, ōnis, m.
here, hic.
hide, lateō, ēre, uī, ———.
high, altus, a, um.
highest (of qualities), summus, a, um.
hill, collis, is, m.
himself, herself, etc., sui, sibi, sē, reflexive.
hinder, impede, impediō, ire, ivī, Itus.
his, suus, a, um, reflexive.
hither, huc, adv.
hold, habeo, ēre, uī, itus.
(home), at home, domi.
home (at one's home), domum.
honor, honorō, āre, āvi, ātus.
honor, honor, ōris, m.
hope, spēs, ei, f.
horn, cornū, ūs, n.
horse, equus, i, m.
horseman, eques, itis, m.
hostage, obses, idis, m.
house, domus, ūs, f.
how many, quot, indecl.
how much, followed by genitive of the whole, **quantum**.
humble, humilis, e.
hundred, centum.
hurl, coniciō, ere, coniecti, coniectus.
hurry, contendō, ere, tendi, tentum.

I, ego, mef.
if, si, conj.
immortal, immortalis, e.
impede, impediō, ire, ivī, Itus.
implore, ōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.

in, in, prep. with abl.
in no way, omninō, adv.
in vain, frustrā, adv.
inasmuch as, quoniam.
increase (trans.), augeō, ēre, auxi, auctus.
infantry, peditēs, um, m.
inferior, inferior, ius, comp. adj.
inform, certiōrem faciō, ere, feci, factus.
inhabit, incolō, ere, ui, cultus.
inhabitant, incola, ae, m.
injure, noceō, ere, ui, itūrus, with the dative.
injury, iniūria, ae, f.
insult, contumēlia, ae, f.
into, in, prep. with acc.
Ireland, Hibernia, ae, f.
island, insula, ae, f.
Italy, Italia, ae, f.

javelin, telum, i, n.
join (battle), committō, ere, misi, missus.
just, iustus, a, um.
justice, iustitia, ae, f.

Kalends, Kalendae, arum, f. pl.
keenness, acūmen, inis, n.
keep away, ward off, prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus.
kill, necō, āre, avi, ātus.
kill, interficiō, ere, feci, fectus.
kind, genus, generis, n.
kind (be), indulgeō, ēre, induli, indultus.
kind, rēx, regis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, i, n.
know, sciō, ire, ivi, itus.

labor, labor, ōris, m.
lack, be lacking, desum, deesse, defui.
land, ager, agri, m.
land (opposed to water), terra, ae, f.
large, magnus, a, um.
last, last part of, limiting a noun, extrēmus, a, um.
law, statute, lēx, legis, f.

lay waste, vastō, āre, āvi, ātus.

lead, dūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.

lead across, trādūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.

lead back, redūcō, ere, xi, ctus.

lead, lead out, lead away, dedūcō, ere, dūxi, ductus.

leader, dux, ducis, m.

learn, cognōscō, ere, nōvi, nitus.

leave (behind), relinqūō, ere, liqui, lictus.

legion, legiō, ōnis, f.

lend (help), ferō, ferre, tuli, latus.

less, minus.

lest, nē.

let go, dimitto, ere, misi, missus.

letter, litterae, ārum, f.

liberty, libertās, ātis, f.

lieutenant, legātus, i, m.

life, vita, ae, f.

light-armed, expeditus, a, um.

like, see love.

like, similis, e.

line of battle, acies, ei, f.

listen to, audiō, ire, ivi, itus.

literature, litterae, ārum, f. pl.

little (a little), paulum.

long (adv.), diū.

long for, desiderō, āre, āvi, ātus.

long (adj.), longus, a, um.

loss, detrimentum, i, n.

love, amō, āre, āvi, ātus.

lowest, infimus, a um, or imus, a, um, superl. of inferus.

loyalty, fides, ei, f.

make, faciō, ere, feci, factus.

make (in sense of, make somebody or something safe, bold, clear, de.), reddō, ere, reddi, redditus.

man, homo, inis, m., the general term for mankind; vir, viri, m., man as opposed to woman, or as a complimentary term.

many, multi, ae, a; **very many**, complūrēs, a; gen. complurium.

march (noun), iter, itineris, n.

march (verb), iter facere, lit., make a march.

march forth, egredior, i, gressus sum.

- market-place**, forum, i, n.
messenger, nūntius, i, m.
middle, medius, a, um.
mile, mille passūs, lit., thousand paces; pl., mīlia passuum.
military experience, ūsus mīlītāris, ūsus mīlītāris, f.
mind, animus, i, m.
mitigate, lēniō, ire, ivi, or ii, itus.
money, pecūnia, ae, f.
moon, luna, ae, f.
more (adv.), magis.
more (substantive), plūs, plūris, n.
most, plērique, aequē, aque.
mother, māter, tris, f.
mound, agger, eris, m.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, migrō, āre, āvi, ātus (intransitive).
move, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus (intransitive).
much, multus, a, um.
muse, mūsa, ae, f.
my, meus, a, um.

name, nōmen, inis, n.
narrow, angustus, a, um.
nation, see **tribe**.
naval, nāvālis, e.
nearest, proximus, a, um, adj., superl. of propior.
necessary, it is necessary, necesse est.
need (be in), egeō, ēre, ui, ———.
need, there is need, opus est (w. ablative).
neglect, neglegō, ere, lēxi, lēctus.
neither, neuter, -tra, -trum, adj. and pron., **neither** (of two).
never, numquam, adv.
nevertheless, tamen, adv.
next, proximus, a, um.
night, nox, noctis, f.
no, nūllus, a, um.
no one, nēmō, dat., nēminī, acc., nēminem; gen. and abl., wanting.
noble, nōbilis, e.
not, nōn. nē.
(not), is not? does not? etc., nōnne.
not even, ne . . . quidem, with the emphatic word between.

not yet, nōndum.

nothing, nihil, indecl.

notice, animadvertō, ere, verti, versus.

now (at the present time), nunc.

number, numerus, I, m.

oak, quercus, ūs, f.

obey, pāreō, ēre, uī, itūrus.

occupy, occupō, āre, avi, ātus.

occur, see become.

of, concerning, dē, prep. with abl.

offer, praebeō, ēre, uī, itus.

often, saepe.

old, vetus, gen., veteris.

on, in, prep. with abl.

on all sides, undique, adv.

one, ūnus, a, um.

one . . . an other, alius . . . alius; **the one . . . the other**, alter . . . alter.

onset, impetus, ūs, m.

open, apertus, a, um.

opinion, sententia, ae, f.

opportunity, occasiō, ōnis, f.

oppose, adversō, āre, avi, ātus.

or, aut. See **either**.

order, levy, imperō, āre, avi, ātus.

order, command, iubeō, ēre, iussi, iussus.

other, another, alius, a, ud.

other, the other, alter, a, um.

others, all the others, cēteri, ae, a.

ought, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus; **it behooves**, oportet, ēre, oportuit.

our, our own, noster, tra, trum.

outer, exterior, ius, comp. of exterus.

overcome, superō, āre, avi, ātus.

owe, dēbeō, ēre, uī, itus.

pace (= 5 feet), passus, ūs, m.

pained (be), doleō, ēre, uī, itus.

pardon, ignoscō, ere, nōvi, nōtus.

parent, parēns, entis, m. and f.

part, pars, partis, f.

- pass** (**narrow**), angustiae, ārum, f. pl.
passage, exitus, ūs, m.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, i, m.
perish, intereō, ire, ii, itūrus.
permit, permittō, ere, mīsi, missus.
persuade, persuādeō, ēre, suāsī, suāsum.
pile, acervus, i, m.
pitch (**camp**), pōnō, ere, posui, positus.
pity, misericordia, ae, f.
pity, it excites pity, miseret, miserēre, miseruit, impersonal.
place, collocō, āre, avi, ātus.
place, locus, i, m.
place in charge, in command over, praeficiō, ere, feci, fectus, with the dat. of indirect obj.
plain, planities, ei, f.
plan, cōsiliū, i, n.
please, placeō, ēre, ui, placitūrus.
pleasing, grātus, a, um.
plunder, diripiō, ire, ripui, reptus.
Pompey, Pompeius, Pompei, m.
position, locus, i, m.
power, potestās, atis, f; the power that is vested in an official.
praetor, praetor, ōris, m.
praise, laudō, āre, avi, ātus.
pray, ōrō, āre, avi, ātus.
prefer, mālō, malle, mālui.
prepare, parō, āre, avi, ātus.
present, give, dōnō, āre, avi, ātus.
present, be present, adsum, esse, fui, futūrus.
preserve, cōservō, āre, avi, ātus.
pretty, pulcher, ra, rum.
prevail, valeō, ēre, valui, itūrus.
prevent, prohibeō, ēre, ui, itus.
private, privātus, a, um.
procure, nanciscor, i, nactus.
prodigy, prodigium, i, n.
promoter, adiūtrix, icis, f.
proud, superbus, a, um.
province, prōvincia, ae, f.
public, pūblicus, a, um.

put in charge, praeficiō, ere, fecī, fectus.

put to flight, fugō, āre, avi, ātus.

queen, rēgina, ae, f.

quickly, celeriter, adv., from the adj., celer, eris, ere.

race (people), genus, eris, n.

rampart, agger, eris, m.

ravage, vexō, āre, avi, ātus.

reason, causa, ae, f.

receive, accipio, ere, cepi, ceptus.

recollection, memoria, ae, f.

reconcile, placō, āre, avi, ātus.

refuse, recūsō, āre, avi, ātus.

region, regiō, ōnis, f.

regret, it causes regret, paenitet, ēre, uit, impersonal.

rejoice, gaudeō, ēre, gāvīsus.

remain, maneo, ēre, mānsi, mānsurus.

remaining, reliquus, a, um.

remember, bear in mind, memini, isse.

remind, admoneō, ēre, ui, itus.

reply, respondeō, ēre, respondi, responsus.

report (noun), fama, ae, f.

report (verb), nūntiō, āre, avi, ātus.

reputation, fama, ae, f.

request, seek, petō, ere, petivi (it), itus.

resist, resistō, ere, restiti, with dative.

resources, opēs, um, f. pl.

rest, the rest, ceteri, ae, a.

restore, restituo, ere, ui, ātus.

retard, tardō, āre, avi, ātus.

return (intrans.), revertor, i; redeō, ire, it, itum.

revolt, seditio, ōnis, f.

reward, praemium, i, n.

Rhine, Rhēnus, i, m.

riches, opēs, ium, f. pl.

right, dexter, tra, trum.

river, flūmen, inis, n. fluvius, i, m.

road, via, ae, f.

robber, latrō, ōnis, m.

Roman, Romānus, a, um; a Roman, Rōmānus, i, m.

Rome, Rōma, ae, f.

rose, rōsa, ae, f.

rough, asper, era, erum.

rouse, sollicitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

rouse, accendō, ere, accendī, accensum.

rout, pellō, ere, pepulī, pulsus.

rule, regō, ere, rēxi, rēctus.

ruler, see **king**.

run forward, prōcurrō, ere, cucurri, cursum.

rush forth, se ēicere.

safety, salūs, ūtis, f.

sailor, nauta, ae, m.

sake, for the sake, causā, with gen., the genitive always precedes.

same, Idem, eadem, idem, **at the same time**, simul.

save, servō, āre, āvi, ātus.

say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.

scarcely, vix.

scout, explorātor, ōris, m.

sea, mare, is, n.

seat, sedīle, is, n.

secret, secrētum, i, n.

seek, quaerō, ere, quaesivī, quaesītus.

seek, petō, ere, petivī, petītus.

seize, capio, ere, cēpi, captus.

seize, expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.

seize, occupō, āre, āvi, ātus.

select, dēligō, ere, lēgi, lectum.

self (i.e., I myself, you yourself, etc.), ipse, in apposition with the subject or object.

self, oneself, sui, sibi, sē.

sell, vëndō, ere, vëndidi, vënditus.

senate, senātus, ūs, m.

send, mittō, ere, misi, missus.

seem, videor, ēri, vīsus sum.

Sequani, Sēquani, ōrum, m.

servant, servus, i, m.

service, ūsus, ūs, m.

set on fire, incendō, ere, cendi, census.

set out, proficiscor, i, fectus sum.

set sail, navēs solvō, etc.

she, ea, f. of is.
shield, scūtum, I, n.
ship, nāvis, is, f.
shore, litus, oris, n.
short, brevis, -e.
show, mōnstrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
sick, aeger, gra, grum.
(from all) sides, undique, adv.
(sides) on all, undique.
silence, silentium, I, n.
since (causal), cum.
sister, soror, ōris, f.
six, sex, indecl.
sky, caelum, I, n.
slave, servus, I, m.
small, parvus, a, um.
so great, tantus, a, um.
so many, tot, indecl.
so (of degree), tam.
so, thus (of manner), ita, sic.
soldier, miles, itis, m.
some . . . others, alii . . . alii.
some, something, aliquis, aliqua, aliquid or aliquod.
son, filius, I, m.
soon, mox, adv.
soul, animus, I, m.
sound, sonitus, ūs, m.
Spain, Hispania, ae, f.
spare, parcō, ere, peperci, parsūrus.
speak, loquor, I, locūtus sum; dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.
spear, hasta, ae, f.
speedily, celeriter, adv.
standard, signum, I, n.
star, stella, ae, f.
state, civitas, ātis, f.
station, collocō, āre, āvi, ātus.
steadfast, firmus, a, um.
storm, oppugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
storm, tempestās, ātis, f.
stone, lapis, idis, m.
story, fabula, ae, f.

strong, fortis, e.
such, talis, e.
sudden, repentinus, a, um.
suddenly, subito.
suffer, laborō, āre, āvi, ātus.
suffer, patior, I, passus sum.
suitable, aptus, a, um.
suitable, idoneus, a, um.
summer, aestas, atis, f.
summon, vocō, āre, āvi, ātus.
(superior), **be superior to**, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.
surely, certe, adv.
surpass, superō, āre, āvi, ātus.
surrender, deditiō, -ōnis, f.
surrender (oneself), dēdō, ere, dedidi, deditus.
surround, circumveniō, ire, vēni, ventus.
suspicion, suspiciō, ōnis, f.
sustain, sustineō, ēre, ui, tentus.
swift, celer, eris, ere.
sword, gladius, i, m.

take, seize, capiō, ere, cēpi, captus.
take by storm, expugnō, āre, āvi, ātus.
take care, cūrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
take oath, iurō, āre, āvi, ātus.
talent, talentum, I, n.
talk, loquor, I, locutus sum.
talkative, loquax, ācis.
tall, altus, a, um.
tarry, moror, āri, ātus sum.
teach, doceō, ēre, ui, doctus.
tell, say, dicō, ere, dixi, dictus.
temple, templum, I, n.
ten, decem, indecl.
terrify, perterreō, ēre, ui, territus.
terror, terror, ōris, m.
than, quam, conj.
thanks, grātia, ae, f.
that, is, ea, id, ille, illa, illud.
that of yours, iste, ista, istud.
that, rel. pron., qui, quae, quod.

that, in order that, ut; qui, quae, quod with the subj.; with comp., quō.

that, on the ground that, quod.

that, lest, with verbs of fearing, nē.

that not, in order that not, nē.

that not, with verbs of fearing, ut.

that (of result), ut, **that not**, ut nōn.

their, their own, suus, a, um.

there, ibi, adv.

they, see **he, she, etc.**

thing, rēs, rei, f.

think, cogitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

third, tertius, a, um.

thirty-eight, duodequadrāgintā.

this, hīc, haec, hōc.

those, as antecedent of rel., ei, eae, ea.

thou, tū, tui.

though, quamquam, quamvis, etsi, cum.

thousand, mille, pl., milia, ium, n.

three, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trecenti, ae, a.

thus, sic.

till, dum, donec, conj.

time, tempus, oris, n.

to, ad, prep. with acc.

today, hodie, adv.

(top) top of, with a noun, summus, a, um.

torture, supplicium, i, n.

touch, moveō, ēre, mōvi, mōtus.

tower, turris, is, f.

town, oppidum, i, n.

townsman, oppidānus, i, m.

transport, transportō, āre, āvi, ātus.

tree, arbor, oris, f.

trench, fossa, ae, f.

tribe, gens, gentis, f.

tribune, tribūnus, i, m.

troops, cōpiae, ārum, f.

true, vērus, a, um.

trust, cōfidō, ere, fīsus sum, semi-dep.

try, make trial, temptō, āre, āvi, ātus.

twenty, viginti.

twenty-two, duo et viginti.

two, duo, duae, duo.

uncertain, incertus, a, um.

under, sub., prep, with acc.

unfavorable, aliēnus, a, um.

unharméd, incolumis, e.

unmindful (be), obliviscor, i, oblitus sum.

until, dum, donec, quoad.

unwilling, invītus, a, um; **be unwilling**, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.

uprising, tumultus, ūs, m.

urge on, incitō, āre, āvi, ātus.

us, nōs, nostrum, nostrī, pl. of ego.

use, ūtor, i, ūsus sum.

valley, vallis, is f.

valor, virtūs, tātis, f.

valuable, pretiōsus, a, um.

Veneti, Veneti, ōrum, m.

very many, complūrēs, a; gen., complūrium.

victory, victōria, ae, f.

see, videō, ēre, vidī, vīsus.

village, vicus, i, m.

virtue, virtūs, ūtis, f.

visit, adeō, ire, it, itus.

voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

wage, gerō, ere, gessi, gestus.

wait, **wait for**, exspectō, āre, āvi, ātus.

wall, mūrus, i, m.

war, bellum, i, n.

watch, vigilia, ae, f.

we, nōs, nostrum or nostrī.

weapons, arma, ōrum, n. pl.

weeping, lacrimae, ārum, f. pl.

welcome, grātus, a, um.

well, bene, adv.

what? quis (quī), quae, quid, (quod).

whatever, quisquis, quidquid.

when? quandō.

- when**, rel., ubi, ut, cum.
where, ubi.
whether, num, -ne.
whither, quō.
while, conj., dum.
who? quis.
who, which, rel. pron., quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, a, um.
why, quārē, adv.
wife, uxor, ōris, f.
willingly, libenter, adv.
wing, cornū, ūs, n.
winter quarters, hiberna, ōrum, n.
wise, sapiens, entis.
wish, volō, velle, volui.
with, cum, prep. with abl.
withdraw, discēdō, ere, cessi, cessurus.
without, sine, prep. with abl.
withstand, sustineō, ere, ui, tentus.
woman, fēmina, ae, f.
wonderful, mirus, a, um.
woods, silva, ae, f.
word, verbum, i, n.
work, labōrō, āre, āvi, ātus.
work (a work), opus, eris, n.
worthy, dignus, a, um.
wound (noun), vulnus, eris, n.
wound (verb), vulnerō, āre, āvi, ātus.
wreath, corōna, ae, f.
wretched, miser, a, um.
write, scrībō, ere, scripsi, scriptus.

year, annus, i, m.
(yet), not yet, nōndum.
yield, cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum.
you, tū, tuī, sing., vōs, vestrum or vestri, pl.
young man, adulēscēns, entis, m.
your, your own, tuus, a, um., vester, tra, trum.



From the Digital Library Collection ,
Of ,
St. Mary's Hermitage Nr. Canterbury in Kent ,

The Order of the Hermits of Saint Bruno ,

Brother Librarian:
[st.maryshermitage\(at\)hermitsofsaintbruno.org](mailto:st.maryshermitage(at)hermitsofsaintbruno.org) ,

<https://hermitsofsaintbruno.org> ,

<https://www.facebook.com/CremaSantaMaria/>

